IAAP

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

EDITION 4.1
2018

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
Goetheanum
Medical Section
4143 Dornach
Switzerland

www.iaap.org.uk
email: info@iaap.org.uk

Introductory Note APC edition 4.1, 2018

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP

The IAAP is the international umbrella organisation of the national associations of Anthroposophic Pharmacists.
Its purpose, objective and tasks are, in detail:

- To represent anthroposophic pharmacy in the anthroposophic-medical movement and in public life on an international level: Anthroposophic pharmacy is understood as an extension of conventional pharmacy.
- To establish standards regarding further education and training as well as practice in anthroposophic pharmacy (including but not limited to retail pharmacy).
- To set quality standards regarding manufacturing methods and substances used for anthroposophic medicinal products.
- To promote research in anthroposophic pharmacy.
- To achieve international recognition by specialised publications and training material for anthroposophic pharmacists.
- To certify national training programmes in anthroposophic pharmacy.
- To certify individuals as anthroposophic pharmacists.
- To establish a cooperative network between anthroposophic pharmacists to exchange information and best practice throughout the world.
- To award the quality label "Anthromed® Pharmacy" to pharmacies which have competence in advice and manufacture of anthroposophic medicines.
- To initiate / coordinate international activities.

It is in respect of setting and maintaining the quality standards that the Board is pleased to publish edition 4.1 of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC). This edition will, as the 4th edition, only be presented in an electronic version.

Only minor changes to the 4th edition have been done. The monographs and requirements of the current version of the European Pharmacopoeia (Ph. Eur.) 9.5 have been taken into account. All references to the British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia have been deleted since the relevant manufacturing methods are now integrated in the Swiss Pharmacopoeia or in the APC itself. Some references for use have been added. All substantive amendments are marked by a line to the side of the text.

In addition, two new substances, missing in the 4th edition has been added.

The APC is reviewed and updated by an anthropo¬sophic pharmaceutical committee reporting to the IAAP board.

The changes in summary:

NEW TEXTS

Appendix 2.3
Corpus striatum from the calf

Appendix 2.7
Equisetum arvense, Fermentatio cum Sero Lactis 1:4

REVISED TEXTS

Part IIa:
Introduction
Survey of general methods for the manufacturing of anthroposophic medicinal products and related specific production methods in pharmacopoeias

3. Tinctures
Method 3.13

Part IV: Appendices
IVAA Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin
Appendix 2.4
Ammonium carbonicum
Appendix 2.7
Carex arenaria, ethanol. Decoctum 1:4

Members of the APC committee

Gabriele Jones, pharmacist, Germany, member of the Further Education Committee of GAPiD.

Peter Pedersen, pharmacist, Denmark, former member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (GHP/HAB).

René Schwarz, biology technician, former head of production Weleda Switzerland, Board member of VAEPS.

Responsible person of the IAAP:

Mónica Mennet-von Eiff, pharmacist, Switzerland, President of the Swiss association VAEPS, Board member of the IAAP; member of the Working Group HOM on Homoeopathic Raw Materials and Stocks of the European Pharmacopoeia (Ph. Eur. HOM WP).

The APC is recognised by the following national anthroposophic pharmaceutical associations:

the **French** Association **AFERPA** (Association Française d'étude et de recherche sur la pharmacie anthroposophique – French Association for Studies and Research on Anthroposophic Pharmacy);
the **Brazilian** Association **Farmantropo** (Associação Brasileira de Farmácia Antroposófica – Brazilian Anthroposophic Pharmacy Association);
the **German** Association **GAPiD** (Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Apotheker in Deutschland – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Germany);
the **Austrian** Association **ÖGAPh** (Österreichische Gesellschaft anthroposophischer Pharmazeuten – Austrian Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);
the **Italian** Association **SOFAI** (Società di farmacisti antroposofi in Italia – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Italy);
the pharmacist section of the **Swiss** association **VAEPS** (Verband für Anthroposophisch Erweiterte Pharmazie in der Schweiz – Association for Anthroposophically Extended Pharmacy in Switzerland);
the Japanese Association AAPJ (Japanese Association of anthroposophic oriented pharmacists).

Dr. Manfred Kohlhase, President IAAP 28.3.2018

Dr. Mónica Mennet-von Eiff, Responsible person of the IAAP

Foreword

Pharmacy extended by the principles of anthroposophy began to be developed at the beginning of the 20th century by Rudolf Steiner (founder of anthroposophy, 1861 – 1925) and Oskar Schmiedel (Austrian chemist, 1887 – 1959), in collaboration with a number of physicians. Their aim was to reinterpret and complement the results of pharmaceutical and medical research with insights gained from anthroposophic research of the human being and nature.
The basis of the anthroposophic approach to pharmacy is the "holistic" knowledge of mankind and nature, which recognizes the notion that human beings and the kingdoms of nature are related through a common evolution[1].
This perception leads to a comprehensive view of substances in their relationship to health, illness and to a specific approach to pharmacy.

Therefore anthroposophic pharmacy uses substances from the mineral, plant and animal kingdoms[2,3].

Anthroposophic medicinal products have been on the market world-wide and prescribed by qualified medical practitioners since 1921.

The range of anthroposophic medicinal products is partially determined by the physical characteristics of substances, whereby allopathic, phytotherapeutic and homoeopathic criteria are taken into consideration. Most particularly, anthroposophic medicinal products are characterised by their manufacturing processes involving specific anthroposophic and typical homoeopathic pharmaceutical procedures. The range of anthroposophic medicinal products includes potentised medicinal products, manufactured by using the methods of the official homoeopathic pharmacopoeias, as well as concentrated mineral, herbal or animal substances or preparations and compounded medicinal products. Considering this diversity, anthroposophic medicinal products, cannot be defined under a single substance classification.

[1] Jos Verhulst: „Der Erstgeborene" (The first-born), publisher Verlag Freies Geistesleben, Stuttgart, D 2001.
[2] Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: „Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.
In English: „Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press , London, GB, 1996.
[3] Rudolf Steiner: „Geisteswissenschaft und Medizin", 20 Vorträge für Ärzte (1920), Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH 1985.
In English: „Introducing Anthroposophical Medicine" (previously published as: Spiritual Science and Medicine). Twenty lectures to doctors. Dornach 21 March – 9 April 1920, GA 312. Anthroposophic Press, Hudson, NY, USA, 1999.

The *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex APC* gives an overview of substances and methods used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products as well as of the related quality parameters.

Legal Situation
Today the European Union Directive 2001/83/EEC and amendments contain the main legislation concerning medicinal products. The legal status of anthroposophic medicinal products in the EU is closely related to that of homoeopathic medicinal products (see below).

Preamble of Directive 2001/83/EEC n° (22) refers to anthroposophic medicinal products as follows:
"Anthroposophic medicinal products, which are described in an official pharmacopoeia and prepared by a homoeopathic method are to be considered, as regards to registration and marketing authorization, as homeopathic medicinal products."

From a regulatory point of view anthroposophic medicinal products can be devided into two categories:
- anthroposophic medicinal products manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing method within the meaning of Directive 2001/83/EEC, article 1, 5.:
  "Any medicinal product prepared from substances called homoeopathic stocks in accordance with a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described by the European Pharmacopoeia or, in absence thereof, by the pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the Member States. (...)"
- anthroposophic medicinal products other than those manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing method.

These are equally important and have never been included in any pharmacopoeia.

The definitions of anthroposophic medicinal products given in the Swiss and German Drug Laws take both categories into account (translations by APC Committee):

Switzerland: Regulation of Swissmedic concerning the simplified Authorisation of Complementary and Herbal Medicinal Products (Verordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln)
Art. 4,2 f: Anthroposophic medicinal product: Medicinal product, whose active substances are manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure, or according to an anthroposophic manufacturing procedure described in the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia or in the British

Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is formulated and developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man, animal, substance and nature and is meant to be used according to these principles.

Germany: Medicinal Products Act (Gesetz über den Verkehr mit Arzneimitteln)
Art. 4, (33) An anthroposophic medicinal product is a medicinal product that has been developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man and nature and that is manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in absence thereof in a pharmacopoeia officially used in the Member States or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is meant to be used according to the anthroposophic principles concerning man and nature.

In many EU countries, and also world-wide, medicinal products used for the anthroposophic therapeutics are thus partially integrated in legislation.

In Brazil as well as in Australia the APC has been officially recognised as quality standard and reference for anthroposophic medicinal products (RESOLUÇÃO RDC No – 26, DE 30 DE MARÇO DE 2007; amendments to the Australian Therapeutic Goods Act, 2009).

In summary anthroposophic medicinal products as a whole are step by step gaining legal recognition in the EU as well as world-wide, and among other things this requires comprehensive publication of their pharmaceutical quality.

The publication of the *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex* is to provide transparency of anthroposophic pharmaceutical quality for pharmacists and bodies requiring an appreciation of anthroposophic medicinal products and pharmacy. Furthermore it provides a basis for the maintenance of existing and development of new anthroposophic medicinal products.

The relationship of the APC to the European Pharmacopoeia, to other existing official Pharmacopoeias and non official pharmacopoeias

The APC is published by the IAAP, an independent association of professional pharmacists, within the context of official existing pharmacopoeias. It is the intention of the APC to refer where possible to existing pharmacopoeias. In fact anthroposophic medicinal products are often manufactured and controlled according to existing specifications and standards.
A part of the reference pharmacopoeias for the APC are published by official Authorities, in particular
The European Pharmacopoeia
The French Pharmacopoeia
The German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (which is a part of the German Pharmacopoeia);
The Swiss Pharmacopoiea has implemented two texts concerning anthroposophic pharmacy in the last eight years:

- in 2009 (Suppl. 10.1) with the general Ph.Helv.-monograph "Praeparationes anthroposophicae (Anthroposophic Preparations)" (Ph.Helv. CH 306); it was the first time that anthroposophic preparations appeared as a monograph in an official pharmacopeia. This monograph includes the paragraphs definitions, starting materials, methods of preparation and dosage forms, by analogy with the Ph.Eur.-monograph Homoeopathic preparations Ph.Eur. 1038.
- in September 2013 (Suppl. 11.1) the new Ph.Helv.-chapter "17.7 Manufacturing methods for anthroposophic preparations" came into force. This chapter gives an overview on the general manufacturing processes and describes in more detail some manufacturing methods which are more frequently used in anthroposophic pharmacy and had not been described in an official pharmacopoeia before.

The APC served as important basis to establish both of these Ph.Helv.-texts. Therefore it can be concluded, that the continuing work of the APC supports the establishment of the pharmaceutical quality standards and the regulation of anthroposophic medicinal products in Switzerland.

Further official pharmacopoeias of reference:
The Austrian Pharmacopoeia
The British Pharmacopoeia

In particular the *European Pharmacopoeia* today represents and for the future will represent a reference of paramount importance for the APC.

Therefore in part IV of the APC containing the lists of the various substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy reference is made where possible to the European Pharmacopoeia and other official pharmacopoeias.

Particularly important Ph.Eur. monographs are:
Herbal drugs for homoeopathic preparations (2045)
Homoeopathic preparations (1038)
Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation (2371)
Minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform

encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products (50208)
Mother tinctures for homoeopathic preparations (2029)
Tinctures (chapter in 0765 Extracts)
Viral safety (50107)
Other pharmacopoeias referred to in the APC are not officially recognised. Nevertheless they provide reliable standards accepted e.g. by regulatory authorities.

The IAAP understands its task to sustain anthroposophic pharmaceutical activities at any level (e.g. manufacturing, quality control, regulatory affairs), **worldwide**, that is, beyond the countries of the European Pharmacopoeia Convention. Therefore during the evolution of the APC other official pharmacopoeias (or reliable private pharmacopoeias) will possibly be referred to, e.g. the Brazilian Pharmacopoeia.

Table of Content

Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC

Part I "Definitions" provides definitions and describes quality aspects as well as parameters related to anthroposophic medicinal products. The different stages incurred in the obtaining of a medicinal product, from the starting material to the dosage form, are described in this part.

Part IIa "General Monographs of specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)" contains general monographs concerning the types of preparations/ active substances that are prepared by specified procedures. Beneath the relevant general monograph(s), different specific production methods by which a particular type of a starting material can be prepared are either quoted from other pharmacopoeias or an APC production method is set out.

In this way, the relationship between the APC and other pharmacopoeias, as well as the option to define substances through their production methods are outlined.

Schematically the following order is applied:

General monographs

Definition, Identification, Tests, Assay, Storage, Recommended Designation

Specific production methods related to the particular general monograph

Ph.Eur. Methods	*HAB Methods*	*Ph.fr. Methods*	*APC Methods*

Part IIb "Monographs of starting materials and preparations" sets standards for specific starting materials and preparations. In their last section the monographs of the starting materials list
a) Some existing anthroposophic preparations that utilise the starting material and/ or
b) Manufacturing methods, described in the Ph.Eur., the HAB or the APC commonly used for the processing of the particular starting material. That list is not meant to be exhaustive.

Part III, information about dosage forms in anthroposophic pharmacy as well as production methods of specific dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products.

Part IV "Appendices"

In **appendix I** starting materials for the preparation of anthroposophic medicinal products are listed (not excipients and vehicles). The appendices are numbered according to the related chapter in part I: 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5., 2.6.

In **appendix II** a link to the HPUS is given:
- Correlation table: Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS.

List of Abbreviations and Symbols

*	see p. 63
1 CH	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also C1 and 1C
1 DH	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also D1 and 1X
1C	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and C1
1X	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and D1
ABMA-Vademecum	Gardin NE, Schleier R: Medicamentos Antroposóficos: Vademecum. Associação Brasileira de Medicina Antroposófica. São Paolo: Editor João de Barro; 2009
APC	Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex
aph	ad preparationes homoeopathicae
API	Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient
B.P.	British Pharmacopoeia
C1	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and 1C
CVD	Chemical Vapour Decomposition
D1	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and 1X
DAB	Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)
DAC	Deutscher Arzneimittel-Codex (German Codex of Medicinal Products)
DER	Drug extract ratio
EU	European Union
fhp	for homoeopathic preparations
GHP	German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia. Unauthorized translation of the HAB. In case of differences between the GHP and the HAB the latter is decisive
Gl	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB method 41 using glycerol
H 2.2.6	Analytical method specified in the HAB
HAB	Deutsches Homöopathisches Arzneibuch (German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia)
HPUS	The Homœopathic Pharmacopœia of the United States
IAAP	International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
IVAA statement 2013	see p. 65
KC Monograph	Monograph of the “Kommission C” (Commission of the German Ministry of Health for the anthroposophic therapeutic system and substances), published in the official Gazette of the German government (in German: “Bundesanzeiger”)
Liste HAS	Liste der Homöopathischen und Anthroposophischen Stoffe (Anhang 4 zurVerordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln (List of Homoeopathic and Anthroposophic Subtances (Appendix 4 in the Regulation of the Swissmedic concerning the simplified Authorisation of Complementary and Herbal Medicinal Products in Switzerland))
LM	Symbol for potencies prepared according to Ph.Eur. (2371) 5.2
MT	Mother tincture
Ph.Eur.	European Pharmacopoeia
Ph.Eur. (2371)	Ph.Eur. Monograph 2371 “Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation”
Ph.fr.	Pharmacopée Française (french Pharmacopoeia), including monographies de souches pour préparations homéopathiques (monographs of the stocks for homoeopathic preparations)
Ph.Helv.	Pharmacopoea Helvetica (Swiss Pharmacopoeia)
pph	pour préparation homöopathiques
Q	Symbol for potencies diluted by the ratio 1: 50 000
Rh	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB methods 21 and 22 (rhythmic procedure)

Vade-mecum	Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland (ed.) Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel 3.erg. Aufl. Der Merkurstab 2013; 66 (Suppl.)

Glossary

In this glossary only those terms are referred to, that need extra clarification prior to the definitions given in part I.

Composition	Definition given in the monograph "Anthroposophische Zubereitungen", (Anthroposophic preparations), Swiss Pharmacopoeia, Supplement 10.2, (translation by Swissmedic): "Compositions are active substances which are obtained, when two or more starting materials or preparations, with or without excipients, are processed together in a pharmaceutical process of anthroposophic pharmacy (e.g. Ferrum-Quarz)."
Excipient	Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of pharmaceutical dosage forms. Excipients may be used in the production of mixtures.
Pharmaceutical process	General term for substance transformations at different stages to obtain starting materials for medicinal products or a medicinal product.
Preparation/active substance	A class of processed starting material specified in the monographs of part II.
Production method	A general manufacturing procedure specified in a pharmacopoeia (see e.g. HAB).
Raw material	Substance which has not undergone any pharmaceutical process and meets a general quality characterisation, e.g. an optical identification.
Starting material	A substance or a composition that meets a specification and can be used as active substance or can be further processed.
Vehicle	Vehicles are auxiliary substances which may be used to produce an active substance. Vehicles may be used in the production of mixtures.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART I

Definitions

Table of Content
Part I

1. Anthroposophic medicinal product

DEFINITION

An anthroposophic medicinal product is conceived, developed and produced in accordance with the anthroposophic knowledge of man, nature, substance and pharmaceutical processing[1]. The application within anthroposophic medicine results from that knowledge[2].

According to anthroposophic principles, active substances may be starting materials which are used as such or starting materials which have been transformed into active substances by a process of anthroposophic pharmacy, including compositions.

An anthroposophic medicinal product can contain one or more active substances (see also part I, chapter 4).

An anthroposophic medicinal product can fundamentally be employed in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms (see also part III).

PRODUCTION

The active substances or dosage forms of anthroposophic medicinal products are produced:

- in accordance with classical homoeopathic or anthroposophic-homoeopathic manufacturing methods as described in the Ph.Eur., HAB, Ph.fr., and B.Hom.P. (Methods 1, 2, 3, 4, 5a, 5b, 6, 8a, 12)
- in accordance with anthroposophic pharmaceutical codex production methods, i.e. "APC Methods"

and/or

- in accordance with anthroposophic manufacturing methods described in the individual monograph.

An anthroposophic medicinal product complies with the relevant specifications/ monographs set out in parts I and II.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Concerning the *designation* of anthroposophic medicinal products a reference to the APC is recommended.

2. Starting materials, general information

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products are:

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

2.6. Compositions (for further information see "Glossary"

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with any relevant monograph in the European Pharmacopoeia or in the absence thereof, with the relevant monographs in national pharmacopoeias used in the Member States, or in absence thereof with the individual monograph.

Starting materials can be active substances themselves or can be processed into preparations (see also Part I, chapter 4).

[1] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, http://www.iaap.org.uk/downloads/principles.pdf

[2] For clarification it has to be mentioned here, that anthroposophic medicine from the beginning includes "Over the Counter" products (OTC). A part of its medicinal products had been conceived right from the start for broad use for typical health disorders; see Chapter XX, "Typical Remedies", in Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: "Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.
In English: "Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press , London, GB, 1996.

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters
Minerals are solid, crystalline components of natural origin belonging to the earth's crust and other celestial bodies. A mineral has a defined crystal system and crystal class. Minerals are chemically and physically homogeneous to a significant extent. In reality, however, there are always deviations from the theoretical mineral formula. Many minerals may show differences in their colours. Form and habitus may be significantly different within the same type.

Rocks are composed of one or more minerals having a geological definition and distribution in their natural deposit with a certain statistical homogeneity.

Pieces that will be used for production should be big enough to allow mineralogical identification. If a powdered mineral is used, adequate documentation should ensure the quality and natural origin. In fact pieces used for production must be free from visible foreign matter. They have not undergone any unwanted mechanical or chemical treatment: in particular any chemical reaction, colouring, varnishing, heating and artificial radiation must be excluded. The amount of foreign matter accepted after chemical analysis is specified in the respective monograph.

Natural waters can come from a natural source (e.g. Levico), from the sea (e.g. aqua maris) or from mineral cavities (e.g. agate water).

List of minerals, rocks, including natural waters: see part IV, appendix 2.1.

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Starting materials of botanical origin are:
- Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
- Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

Fresh plants should be used shortly after harvest. If this is not possible, the quality is guaranteed by appropriate measures, e.g. freezing.

If material from cultivated plants is used preference should be given to materials from plants cultivated by biodynamic cultivation ("Demeter" certified) or by other certified organic cultivation methods in accordance to the relevant European regulations ruling organic agricultural products (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91).
If wild plants are harvested protection of species according to relevant regulations is granted and special care is taken of the eco-system concerned.

Plants or parts of plants are, as far as possible, free from impurities such as soil, dust, dirt and other contaminants such as fungal, insect and other animal contaminations. They are not decayed.

Harvested plants or the mother tinctures made thereof are analysed for content of heavy metals and pesticides. The range and frequency of this testing can occur according to a monitoring plan based on risk assessment.

Unless otherwise stated, the collecting or harvesting times are generally:

Whole plants with underground parts and plants without underground parts	at flowering time
Leaves and shoots	when fully developed
Flowers	shortly after opening
Bark	throughout the year
Underground parts of annual plants	at seed ripening time
Underground parts of biennial and perennial plants	in spring
Fruits and seeds	at the time of ripening
Fungi	when the fruiting bodies are fully developed

Particle size: according to Ph.Eur. 2.1.4 Sieves.

Starting materials of botanical origin see part IV, appendix 2.2.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Starting materials of zoological origin are:
- Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
- Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

Lower animals as well as warm-blooded animals are used.

Animal husbandry and keeping must be adequate for the animal species (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91). In particular in the case of warm-blooded species animals from well-monitored "Demeter" or biodynamic herds are preferentially used.

The starting materials of zoological origin must meet the requirements of the European and/ or relevant national pharmacopoeias regarding the preparation of medicinal products from materials of animal origin and with EU directives and/or national guidelines of the appropriate regulatory authorities.
In particular the Ph.Eur. monographs on TSE safety (Ph.Eur. 50208), and viral safety (Ph.Eur. 50107) apply.

Animals must be healthy and in good hygienic condition. The intervals given in legislation after the administration of drugs to animals must be observed before the animals are used.

Health requirements, animal keeping, protection of species and processing of animals must comply with the relevant guidelines of responsible national authorities and those of the European Union, where applicable.

List of starting materials of zoological origin see part IV, appendix 2.3.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically
Starting materials that can be described chemically are inorganic and organic substances.
Organic substances are generally of natural origin, e.g. purified fractions.

Preference should be given to clearly traceable substances, that comply with the quality standards in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3.

List of starting materials that can be described chemically see part IV, appendix 2.4.

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment
Starting materials that have undergone a special treatment are: e.g. plants, parts of plants cultivated by special treatment (see part IIa, chapter 1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures).

List of starting materials that have undergone special treatment see part IV appendix 2.5.

2.6. Compositions
Different starting materials described in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5 undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes that will lead to a substance that cannot be described as an addition of its ingredients. The rationale for the synthesis is an anthroposophic formula, in accordance with the anthroposophic understanding of man and nature[1].

List of compositions see part IV, appendix 2.6.

3. Vehicles and excipients

Vehicles are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of active substances (e.g. ethanol to obtain an extract or lactose monohydrate to obtain a potentised preparation). Vehicles are also used in the production of mixtures (see part IIa, chapter 9).

Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of the pharmaceutical dosage forms (e.g. NaCl to obtain an isotonic solution for parenteral preparations). Excipients are also used in the production of mixtures (see part IIa, chapter 9).

Vehicles and excipients used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with the relevant requirements of the European Pharmacopoeia or of the national pharmacopoeias used in the EU Member States.

4. Active substances

4.1. Starting materials
Active substances can be starting materials themselves or preparations.
Starting material used directly as active substances may be the final dosage form, e.g. a herbal tea.

4.2. Preparations
Preparations are obtained from one or more starting materials.

Preparations comply with the specifications described in part II or in the individual monograph.

Preparations can be the final dosage form or can be processed further, e.g. to obtain mixtures.

[1] As an example see: "Biodoron/Kephalodoron" , in Persephone N° 12, M. Kohlhase editor; publisher Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach, CH, 1998.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIa

General monographs of preparations and specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)

Table of Content Part IIa

Introduction

Brief description of the main pharmaceutical processes applied in anthroposophic pharmacy

Several pharmaceutical processes are described in existing homoeopathic pharmacopoeias as "production methods". These homoeopathic pharmacopoeial production methods can be seen as examples of the general anthroposophic pharmaceutical principle described in the general APC monographs of part IIa.

In anthroposophic pharmacy the treatment of the raw or starting materials can already be part of the pharmaceutical processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a metal or mineral preparation.

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

Preparations can be differentiated according to the thermal condition or treatment in the pharmaceutical process. Hereby follows a scheme concerning the related pharmaceutical processes applied to plant material and the main sphere of action.

Preparations may be the final dosage form, be incorporated into the final dosage form or be processed further, e.g. by potentisation.

Treatments in liquid phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat/cold degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Cold maceration	2 – 8 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	System of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Maceration	15 – 25 °C	fresh plants, all parts	system of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Rhythmic processing	4/37 °C	fresh plants, all parts	rhythmic system
Digestion	37 °C	fresh plants, leaves, flowers	rhythmic system, circulation
Infusion	60 – 90 °C	dried leaves, flowers	metabolic system, any type of gland
Decoction	ca 100 °C	dried roots, barks, seeds	metabolic system, digestive tract (stomach, intestine)
Distillation	steam, ca 100 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	metabolic system, digestion

Treatments in dry phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Toasting	170 – 250 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	metabolic system, digestion (liver)
Carbonisation	above 200 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	metabolic system, kidney organisation
Ash process	above 500 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	region of the lungs (respiration)

A crucially important pharmaceutical process is potentisation:

- Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid potencies) has been carried out.
- During this process the surface of the vehicle and the substance to be potentised are expanded and the mixing is thorough. The potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse). Anthroposophic pharmacy mainly uses decimal attenuations. For co-potentised preparations the ratio between active substances to vehicle may vary, differing from 1:10 for homoeopathic co-potentising methods (see also Part IIa, 8 "Potentised Preparations").

[1]General scheme for the correlation between spheres of therapeutic action/ degree of potentisation:

Mother tincture – D10	Metabolic system
D11-D20	Rhythmic system
>D20	System of nerves and senses

See also:
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, "The System of Anthroposophic Medicine", pp. 26-28 at ***http://www.ivaa.info/userfiles/file/SystemAnthroposMedicine2011_Interaktiv.pdf***

[2] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, http://www.iaap.org.uk/downloads/principles.pdf
Meyer U. & Pedersen P.A. (ed.): Anthroposophische Pharmazie, Salumed Verlag Berlin 2016.

Survey of general methods for the manufacturing of anthroposophic medicinal products and related specific production methods in pharmacopoeias

General method of the APC	Related specific production method			
	Ph.Eur. (2371)	**HAB**	**Ph.Helv.**	**APC**
1. Special treatment of raw materials				
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures			17.7.1.1, 17.7.1.2	1.1.1, 1.1.2
2. Metal preparations				
2.1. Metal mirrors			17.7.2.1 – 17.7.2.4	2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
3. Tinctures and oil extracts				
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof		38	17.7.6	
3.2. Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water	1.1.1 – 1.1.11 1.3.1	12b, c, m, n, o, p, q	17.7.7.1	3.2.1, 3.2.2
3.3. Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol	2.1.1 – 2.1.3 2.2.1 – 2.2.4			3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.3.3
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil				3.4.1
3.5. Tinctures made by percolation	1.1.8 – 1.1.9		17.7.7.2	3.5.1
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures under exclusion of oxidative influence		32		
3.7. Fermented tinctures		53	17.7.7.3	3.7.1
3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)	1.2.1 – 1.2.6 1.4.1		17.7.8.1	3.8.1, 3.8.2
3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)	1.2.13, 1.4.4		17.7.8.3	3.9.1, 3.9.2, 3.9.3
3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)	1.2.7 – 1.2.12 1.4.2 – 1.4.3	12k, l	17.7.8.4	3.10.1
3.11. Oil extracts with heat treatment		12d – g, 57		

General method of the APC	Related specific production method			
	Ph.Eur. (2371)	**HAB**	**Ph.Helv.**	**APC**
3.12. Preparations made by distillation		52	17.7.8.5	3.12.1, 3.12.2
3.13. Tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold		21 – 22, 33 – 37, 51	17.7.9	3.13.1, 3.13.2.
4. Solid starting materials obtained by heat				
4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)			17.7.4.1	4.1
4.2. Carbons (Carbo)			17.7.4.2	4.2
4.3. Ashes (Cinis)			17.7.4.3	4.3
5. Solid preparations from plants and liquids (drying onto a vehicle)				
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants	4.1.1 − 4.1.2		17.7.5.1	5.1.1
5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts	4.2.1 − 4.2.2		17.7.5.2	5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3
6. Liquid dilutions	3.1.1 – 3.1.3			
7. Compositions			17.7.3	7.2.1 − 7.2.4
8. Potentised preparations Potentising specifications in:	1 – 5	12j 11, 15, 32 – 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53		8.1.1, 8.1.2, 8.2.1, 8.2.2 Other APC Methods 8.3
9. Mixtures		12a, 12h, 12i, 16		

Note: How to read the table: Specific production methods are published in different pharmacopoeias e.g. in the Ph.Eur. or in the HAB; it is not a correlation table. If a method (e.g. HAB 49), has been transferred into the Ph.Eur. (2371, 1.3.1), the number is no longer listed in the HAB column. Anthroposophic medicinal products may also be manufactured in accordance with individual specifications or monographs, see also Part I, chapter 1.

1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS

In anthroposophic pharmacy treatment of the raw materials can be part of the pharmaceutically relevant processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a preparation of a mineral, normally containing a specific metal.

1.1. Vegetabilisation methods ("vegetabilised metals")

DEFINITION

Vegetabilisation of substances can be considered as a particular kind of potentising process of metals or minerals taking place through nature. The potentising process is carried out with plants and normally goes through three life cycles. The life cycle means one vegetation period (growing season) for annual, and two growing seasons for biennial plants. The substance and appropriate plant are chosen in accordance with the rationale of anthroposophic understanding of man and nature.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCES

See APC Method 1.1.1 and 1.1.2.

CULTIVATION

The cultivation of vegetabilised metals is a three years process (for biennial plants 6 years), meaning three generations of plants are grown until the final plant can be further processed, for example to a mother tincture. This process is basically the same for each specific metal (mineral)-plant combination.
Important for the cultivation process is, that each plant grows in the cultivation substrate and field soil specifically prepared for each vegetation period.
The following is a cultivation description for each of the three growing seasons or life cycles.
Exemptions have to be prescribed in individual monographs (e.g. Bryophyllum, Equisetum arvense and Thuja occidentalis).

1st life cycle:
The seeds are sown in soil, which has been treated with a diluted preparation of the concerned inorganic substance (approximately 50 – 200 g/m^2). Alternatively, jars with cultivation substrate, mixed with 5 – 20 g diluted preparation/L can be used. In this case, the young growing plants are transferred to soil, which has been treated as mentioned above.
When the plants reach their full development, i.e. in the flowering stage, compost is made from these plants. For preparing that compost, the upper aerial parts of the specific plant are used as prescribed in the individual monograph; the flowers or/and the leaves with petioles, possibly with stalks, but no woody parts are included. The plant material is mixed together with neutral plant-compost which activates the first composting processes. This metal plant-compost mixture is stored in terracotta pots which are buried almost completely in the soil in the same field used in that growing season. The composting process is continued during the whole winter until the next spring.
In spring the compost is completed and ready to be used to treat the plants of the next growing season, the second life cycle.

2nd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil, which was treated with the compost, made from the plant of the 1st growing season. These plants (of the second life cycle) are also grown to their specific plant development stage (i.e. flowering). Compost is made from these plants, which is prepared in a way similar to the compost of the plants of the first life cycle. This compost is stored in terracotta pots, buried in the soil, in the field of the plants of the second life cycle.

3rd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil which was treated with compost made from the plants of the second vegetation period. The plants of the third growing season (third vegetation period) are cultivated to their specified harvest stage.

FURTHER PROCESSING

The harvested plants are processed into a mother tincture according to a manufacturing method of the Ph.Eur., HAB or the APC or are otherwise processed.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY

According to the relevant tincture monograph (See Part IIa, chapters in section 3) or dried herbal drug.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fertilised plant,
- the substance used,
- the designation "cultum", "culta",
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Examples: Tabacum Cupro cultum APC, Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum APC

Specific pharmacopoeia/APC production methods to produce vegetabilised substances
APC Method 1.1.1 Vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin ("vegetabilised metals")

For the vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin plants are treated with a diluted substance, prepared from either a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore).

PREPARATION OF METALLIC SUBSTANCE

The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore). This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing the metal in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate, the result being the metal substance D1: the content of the metal is 8 – 12 %. The metal substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted metal substance that is ready for use. The calculated metal content of this diluted metal substance differs, according to the toxicity and natural abundance of the metal in the soil:

Au, Ag, Pb, Sn, Hg:	max. 100 ppm
Fe, Cu:	max. 1000 ppm

APC Method 1.1.2 Vegetabilisation of silicates

For the vegetabilisation of silicates plants are treated with appropriate mineral containing silica.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCE

The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a pulverised mineral silicate. This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing silicium in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate; the result is the silica, particularly quartz substance D1: the content of silicium is 8 – 12 %, calculated as silicium dioxide .

The silica, particularly quartz substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted silica, particularly quartz substance that is ready for use. The calculated content is max. 1 % silicium dioxide.

2. METAL PREPARATIONS

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

2.1. Metal mirrors

DEFINITION

By producing metal mirrors the metal is transformed through different states of aggregation.The metals or metal salts can be brought through a liquid state (melted or as solution), gas state or plasmatic state to be subsequently (obtained again) condensed in solid state as the pure metal.

Metal mirrors are deposits of metals in reduced state onto a surface by a specific method of production.

Metal mirrors, produced according to APC methods 2.1.1, 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 can be removed from the surface and may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. method 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 and HAB method 48.

TESTS

The following analytical tests are always carried out for the metal which is used as starting material to produce the mirror. The metal mirror itself is only tested when it is produced by the method of reduction of metal salts (2.1.3), the method of chemical vapour decomposition (2.1.2) or the method of sputtering (2.1.4). The metal mirror produced by the method of distillation (2.1.1) is tested after further processing as the first or second produced dilution.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one suitable identification test is carried out.

TESTS

see the individual monograph.

ASSAY

Content according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the metal used,
- the designation ”metallicum praeparatum” or in the case of metal mirror foil the name of the metal followed of the word “foil”,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,

Examples: Argentum metallicum praeparatum APC Cuprum mirror foil APC.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to prepare metal mirrors

APC Method 2.1.1 Metal mirrors obtained by distillation
Metal mirrors prepared by distillation are obtained from the pure metal.
The pure metal is heated in appropriate equipment under vacuum until it evaporates. The temperature and the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal is distilled. The metal vapour condenses onto the surface of the cooler parts of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed after cooling from the surface.
The exact conditions of the distillation are described in the individual monograph.

APC Method 2.1.2. Metal mirrors obtained by Chemical Vapour Decomposition, CVD
Metal mirrors prepared by chemical vapour decomposition are obtained from a volatile metal compound.
A volatile metal compound is distilled under vacuum in appropriate equipment. The temperature and the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal compound is distilled. The vapour is further heated until decomposition of the metal compound. As a result, the pure metal condenses onto the surface of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. After cooling the metal mirror is removed from the surface.

APC Method 2.1.3. Metal mirrors obtained by reduction
Metal mirrors prepared by reduction are obtained from an appropriate metal salt.
To a solution of a metal salt an appropriate reducing agent and reagents are added. The pure metal precipitates onto the surface of the reaction vessel producing the metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface, filtered from the solution, washed with purified water and ethanol (the concentration of ethanol depending of the nature of the used reagents), until foreign matters are no longer detectable in the rinsing water and then dried.

APC Method 2.1.4. Metal mirror foil
Metal mirror foils are prepared by a process which transforms the processed metal into a plasma aggregation and finally condenses as an approximate 55 – 65 nm thick metal mirror on to the substrate.
To produce a metal mirror foil a process known as sputtering is used. In this vapour phase technique there is no melting of the metal. The sputtering process is most commonly used for thin-film deposition of many different metals. High energy ions impacting on the target can liberate sputtered atoms of the metal as well as positive ions and electrons.
A metal target is put under the effect of a magnetrom. A magnetrom is comprised of a cathode (electron source) an anode (electron collector) and a combined electric and magnetic field. Vacuum conditions ($0.5 – 5 \times 10^{-3}$ mbar) are generated and an inert gas (e.g. Argon Ph.Eur.) is used as medium. The process begins as a result of a collision and momentum transfer from an incoming particle which impacts the inert gas molecules. Ions of the inert gas impact then the surface of the metal and the result is an ejection of metal atoms from the surface. The electric field leads to an ionisation of the metal which goes into a plasma aggregation state (at 30 – 45 °C) and condensates as a metal mirror on the substrate, in this case a plastic foil (e.g. PET). After this process the metal mirror foil is stitched to a special cotton tissue directly over the metal mirror.
The metal mirror foils must not be further processed.

TESTS
Thickness of the mirror.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
for external use only.

3. TINCTURES, MOTHER TINCTURES, GLYCEROL MACERATES AND VISCOUS EXTRACTS

Tinctures, mother tinctures, glycerol macerates and viscous extracts are obtained from starting materials from botanical or zoological origin by pharmaceutical processes under cold condition (2 – 8 °C), at ambient temperature (15 – 25 °C), with heat treatment at different temperatures, by rhythmic application of heat and cold, by fermentation as well as by distillation. If applicable, vehicles e.g. water, ethanol, water/ethanol mixtures, glycerol, oils may be used. They may be processed further.

3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof

DEFINITION
Cold treated mother tinctures are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs. The maceration is carried out at a temperature of 2 – 8 °C using purified water, water for injections or isotonic solution.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted.
The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting

material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container, where applicable protected from light, for an appropriate time (at least 7 days). Shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained under cold conditions (2 – 8 °C)

HAB Method 38

3.2. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water are liquids and are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at a temperature not above 25 °C by using ethanol of a
suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted; animals are processed immediately after killing. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, where applicable protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used. If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

Ethanol content *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.10)*. Where applicable, the ethanol content complies with that prescribed in the individual monograph.

Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,

the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
1.1.1 – 11
HAB Methods
1 – 4
Ph.Eur. 1.3.1 (prev. HAB Method 49)
12b, c, m, n, o

APC Method 3.2.1 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.2.1 are prepared using the maceration methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from the equation given in Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

POTENTISATION
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 36 per cent *(V/V)* for D4 and then 18 per cent (*V/V*) for subsequent dilutions from D5 onwards and proceed accordingly.

APC Method 3.2.2 (related to HAB Method 12a)
Preparations according to APC Method 3.2.2 are tinctures for external use. They are prepared as follows: Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 10 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration
(see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.
Glycerol may be added up to 10 per cent.

3.3. Glycerol macerates

DEFINITION
Glycerol macerates comply with the definition in Ph.Eur. monograph 1038. They are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) using glycerol of a suitable concentration or a glycerol solution containing sodium chloride.

PRODUCTION
Lower animals are killed immediately before processing; the parts of warm-blooded animals are processed immediately after being killed. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering. Comminute the matter to be extracted. Add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at a temperature not above 25 °C, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the starting material of botanical or animal origin used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic or electrophoretic (animal matter) identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Conductivity *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.38).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph. Alternatively, the refractive index can be used.
Refractive index (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.6*). Where applicable (preparations according to APC Methods 3.3.1 and 3.3.2), the refractive index of the preparation is measured in appropriate equipment, this measure indicates the water content in the glycerol[1], and this value is called η_m indicating the refractive index of the macerate. This

[1] Miner, Carl S.& Dalton, N.N: (ed.). *Glycerol*, American Chemical Society, Monograph Series, n^0 117. Reinhold Publishing Corp., New York 1953.

measure is used to calculate the proportion of glycerol of the macerate. This calculation is made based on the following equation:

$$\%\ Glycerol\ {}^{m}/_{m} = \frac{\eta_m - 1.3195}{0.0016} \quad \text{(eq.1)}^{1}$$

Electrophoresis *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.31).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the characteristics prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological examination *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.12, 2.6.13)*. Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- the glycerol content of the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to macerate,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce glycerol macerates

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
2.1.1 – 2.1.3 (prev. HAB Methods 42)
2.2.1 – 2.2.4 (prev. HAB Methods 41)

APC Method 3.3.1

Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.1 are prepared from 3 parts of fresh (frozen) matter of botanical or zoological origin and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 70–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

APC Method 3.3.2

Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.2 are prepared from 1 part of dried plants or parts of plants, 2 parts of purified water and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of purified water is added to the starting material. Allow standing in a closed container for 6 hours. After that, the prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the mixture. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 75–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

APC Method 3.3.3

Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.3.3 are prepared from killed or freshly slaughtered animals or parts thereof by maceration with glycerol as vehicle (glycerol macerates).

To produce the first decimal dilution (D1), disperse 1 part of finely minced animal material in 9 parts of glycerol (85 per cent), allow to macerate for at least 2 h, then succuss. Where justified, the addition of 1 part of glycerol (85 per cent) to 1 part of animal material before the mincing is accepted. Filter when necessary. In the case of very small amounts of animal material, it is allowed to prepare the 2nd or the 3rd decimal dilution by dispersing 1 part of finely minced animal material in 99 resp. 999 parts (= D2 resp. D3) of glycerol (85 per cent).

POTENTISATION

Where the mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø = D1), the 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is produced from:
1 part of the mother tincture (D1);
9 parts of glycerol (85 per cent) or ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is produced from:
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution;
9 parts of ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D3.

Where the mother tincture corresponds to the 2nd or 3rd decimal dilution (Ø = D1), the 3rd or the 4th decimal dilution, respectively (D3 or D4) is produced from:
1 part of the mother tincture (D2 or D3)
9 parts of ethanol (18 per cent *V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

DEFINITION
Liquid preparations prepared by maceration with oil are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) mostly by using arachis oil or olive oil.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted. When animal matter is used, lower animals are killed immediately before processing, the parts of warm-blooded animals being processed immediately after killing. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering, e.g. according to HAB H 5.2.4.The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

APC Method 3.4.1
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.4.1 are oil extracts for external use prepared from 1 part of lower animals and 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.) as follows:

After having killed the animals with CO_2, the animals are minced and mixed thoroughly with 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.). Protect the mixture from light. The extraction time should not exceed 8 hours. Then filter.

3.5. Mother tinctures made by percolation

DEFINITION
Mother tinctures made by percolation are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs.
The percolation is carried out at room temperature using ethanol of suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the herbal drug to be extracted to pieces of suitable size. Mix thoroughly with a potion of the prescribed extraction solvent and allow to stand for an appropriate time. Transfer to a percolator and allow the percolate to flow slowly making sure that the matter to be extracted is always covered with the remaining extraction solvent. The residue may be pressed out and the expressed liquid combined with the percolate.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another percolate of the herbal drug used for the preparation.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures made by percolation

Ph.Eur. (2371), Methods 1.1.8, 1.1.9
HAB Methods 4

APC Method 3.5.1 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8)

Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.5.1 are prepared using the percolation methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from the equation given in Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 50 per cent (*V/V*) for subsequent dilutions from D4 onwards and proceed accordingly.

3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence

DEFINITION
Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence are produced by exhaustive extraction of fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants under the exclusion of atmospheric oxygen with a buffer.

If the fresh plant material is not processed immediately, it must be stored in liquid nitrogen. The loss on drying *(H 2.8.1)* must be determined before it is placed in liquid nitrogen.
From 1 part of the plant material an amount of mother tincture, prescribed in the individual monograph, is produced according to HAB Method 32. This amount is determined in a validation and depends on the loss on drying of the harvested plant material.The mother tincture corresponds to the 2nd decimal dilution (mother tincture = D2).
At first add a defined amount of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution to the plant material and then finely reduce this mixture to a slurry. Under further size reduction, add a quantity of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution, sufficient for achieving the required amount of extract. Express, filter and adjust to the required volume with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution.

According to the individual monograph the production of the mother tincture may require the addition of a second extract from material of the same plant species harvested at a different season. In this case mix the extracts in an appropriate apparatus to a composition (see Chapter 7) and then dilute in a defined proportion with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution. This composition is the mother tincture (=D2).
Potentisation is generally carried out according to HAB Method 32.

Buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are exclusively intended for parenteral dosage forms. Before they are processed to finished products, the mother tincture (D2) and the liquid dilution D3 must be stored for between 6 weeks and 1 year. Any eventual sediment must be excluded from the further processing.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Loss on drying *(H 2.8.1)*. Loss on drying of the residue after filtration.
Sterility *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.1)*. If buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are stored before further processing, they must comply with the test.
Proportion of original extracts: Where applicable, the proportion of both extracts in the composition is determined e.g. by HPLC or by other suitable methods.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed, airtight container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- the amount of herbal drug used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence

HAB Method 32

3.7. Fermented mother tinctures

DEFINITION

Fermented mother tinctures are aqueous preparations from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs prepared by fermentation at room temperature.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Add purified water according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent. Allow to stand at room temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph protected from air, from light and, if necessary, from oxidation. Hereafter express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out with purified water or by adding purified water to the residue and expressing again.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce fermented mother tinctures

HAB Method 53
APC Methods 7.2.1, 7.2.3, 7.2.4

APC Method 3.7.1 (see also Compositions 7.2.1)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.7.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24 °C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5.
Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 96 per cent (*V/V*) and 0.05 parts of purified water.
This tincture can together with another tincture of the same plant undergo a special pharmaceutical process leading to a composition according to method 7.2.1.

This procedure is followed for plants harvested in the summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in the winter. The mother tincture is produced by composing equal parts of the two tinctures.

POTENTISATION

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the mother tincture and
7 parts of ethanol 36 per cent (*V/V*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations according to APC Method 3.7.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 3.7.1".

3.8. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion are liquids prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried plants or parts of plants by heat treatment usually at 37 °C and additional maceration. The digestion is carried out using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the plant or parts of plants to be extracted. The quantity of extraction liquid is added according to the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly and warm to 35 – 39 °C. Then keep at 35 – 39 °C in a covered container. Allow to stand at this temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph, stirring occasionally. After cooling, allow to stand at room temperature in a well-closed container, protected from light for the time described in the individual monograph. Add ethanol of appropriate concentration if prescribed. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the digestion or with another digestion of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Digestio" or "ethanol. Digestio" if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion

Ph.Eur. (2371) 1.2.1 – 6 (prev. HAB Methods 18)
Ph.Eur. (2371) 1.4.1 (prev. HAB Method 24b)

APC Method 3.8.1
Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 are prepared from fresh plants with purified water as follows:
Comminute the plants or parts of plants unless otherwise prescribed in the monograph. The amount of plants or parts of plants and purified water are defined by the monograph. Introduce the amount of purified water into a round-bottomed flask, place in a water bath and heat up to 48 – 52 °C. Add the plants or parts of plants whereby the flask should be a half to three quarters full, mix thoroughly. Close the flask hermetically. Keep the mixture at 48 – 52 °C for 6 hours. Allow to cool to 35 – 39 °C in the course of 20 – 24 hours and maintain this temperature for 64 – 72 hours with occasional stirring. Allow to cool. If prescribed in the individual monograph add the amount of ethanol 96 per cent *(V/V)* prescribed then express and filter.
Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 which are prepared with purified water only, are generally processed immediately to solid preparations (see method 5.2 "Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts").

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 carry the designation "Digestio APC 3.8.1". The same applies to preparations made from them. Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 with addition of ethanol carry the designation "ethanol. stab. digestio APC 3.8.1".

APC Method 3.8.2
Method 3.8.2 is used for fresh plants.
Mother tinctures prepared according to APC Method 3.8.2 are ethanolic digestions prepared by heat treatment with additional maceration as described below.
Comminute appropriately the plant or the parts of plants. To 1 part of the comminuted plant add 3.1 parts of ethanol 24 per cent *V/V*. Warm the mixture in a well-closed container to 37 °C and maintain this temperature for 1 h. Cool, allow to stand for not less than 10 days, stirring the mixture or swirling the container from time to time, then express the mixture and filter the resulting liquid. The filtrate is the mother tincture.

3.9. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)

DEFINITION
Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion are prepared from adequately prepared dried plant material by adding boiling purified water. If ethanol (of the prescribed concentration) is used, the quantities of ethanol and purified water are added separately.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the plant material. Boiling purified water is used for extraction. If ethanol of suitable concentration is used, the quantity of ethanol is either used prior to extraction for moistening the dried plant material for the time prescribed or added to the mixture after cooling. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for the time prescribed. If only purified water is used as solvent, it is also used for moistening and to make up the final mass if prescribed. Express and filter, if necessary. If only purified water is used as solvent the preparation is processed further immediately.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia , or another limit is justified and authorised.
Sterility *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.1)*. Applicable only if the infusion is a stored aqueous preparation.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, if the tincture contains ethanol.
If aqueous tinctures made by infusion are stored they must meet the requirements of sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Infusum" or "ethanol. Infusum", if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion

Ph.Eur. (2371) 1.2.13 (prev. HAB Method 20)
Ph. Eur. (2371) 1.4.4 (prev. HAB Method 24a)

APC Method 3.9.1 (related to Ph.Eur. Method 1.12.13)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.1 are prepared from dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of ethanol of the concentration, prescribed in the individual monograph as follows:
Add the amounts of ethanol and purified water required to obtain the prescribed ethanol concentration separately.
Unless a degree of comminution is specified in the monograph, comminute the herbal drug appropriately, add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss by evaporation and add the required amount of ethanol. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION

The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø = D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration as calculated for the mother tincture.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the ethanol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession – 50 – 36 – 18 per cent (*V/V*) until the 18 per cent level is reached.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.9.1 carry the designation "ethanol. stab. infusum". The same applies to preparations made from them.

APC Method 3.9.2 (related to HAB Method 20)
deleted

APC Method 3.9.3
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.3 are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of water *(m/m)* or according to the individual monograph. Comminute the starting material and add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION

The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø= D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of glycerol 85 % *(m/m)*.

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants that have been allowed to boil with ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water or extracted with glycerol 85 % at 100°C.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the plants or parts of plants, add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. Heat the mixture to boiling (in the case of glycerol 85 % to 100°C), if necessary under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature (in the case of glycerol 85 % at 100°C) for the time prescribed, usually 30 min. After cooling allow to stand in a well-closed container protected from light at room temperature for the time described in the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the decoction or with another decoction of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture

can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal substance used,
- where applicable, the fresh or dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Decoctum" or "ethanol. Decoctum", if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction

HAB Methods 12k, 12l, 12q
Ph.Eur. (2371) 1.2.7 – 12 (prev. HAB Methods 19)
Ph.Eur. (2371) 1.4.2 – 3 (prev. HAB Methods 23)

APC Method 3.10.1 (related to Ph.Eur. Method 1.2.12)
APC Method 3.10.1. is used for dried herbal drugs. Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.10.1 are ethanolic decoction prepared by heat treatment with ethanol of an appropriate concentration as specified in the individual monograph with additional maceration as described below.
1 part of dried herbal drug is macerated with 20 parts of ethanol of the appropriate concentration (anhydrous,
96 per cent *V/V* – 94 per cent *m/m*,
90 per cent *V/V* – 86 per cent *m/m*,
80 per cent *V/V* – 73 per cent *m/m*,
70 per cent *V/V* – 62 per cent *m/m*,
50 per cent *V/V* – 43 per cent *m/m*,
36 per cent *V/V* – 30 per cent *m/m*,
18 per cent *V/V* – 15 per cent *m/m*),
unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.

Unless otherwise prescribed, comminute the herbal drug, mix thoroughly with the total amount of ethanol of the appropriate concentration and heat to boiling under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature for 30 min unless otherwise specified in the individual monograph. Cool or allow to cool and leave the mixture to stand in a closed container for 12 – 36 h. Separate the residue from the ethanol and, if necessary, press out. In the latter case, combine the 2 liquids obtained.
Adjust to the concentrations required in the individual monograph in accordance with Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8.

POTENTISATION

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of a reduced concentration as given below.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the ethanol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession 96 – 90 – 80 – 70 – 50 – 36 – 18 per cent (*V/V*) until the 18 per cent level is reached.

3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment

DEFINITION

Viscous extracts with heat treatment are prepared from fresh or dried herbal drugs using a fatty or mineral oil or glycerol 85 % as extraction liquid with heat.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Ethanol 96 per cent *(V/V)* may be added to moisten the plant material. The prescribed quantity of the extraction liquid (mostly peanut, olive, sesame or sunflower oil, liquid paraffin, or glycerol 85 %) is added and mixed thoroughly with the herbal drug. The mixture is heated at the prescribed temperature and allowed to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time. Extraction temperature and

time are prescribed in the individual monograph. Finally express and filter. If necessary, the empty space of the container is filled with a protecting gas.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation made with a vegetable oil complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-filled, airtight container, protected from light and heat. If necessary, the empty space in the container of oil extracts is filled with an inert gas.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- the extraction liquid used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- an indication of the extraction temperature,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce viscous extracts with heat treatment

HAB Methods 12 d-g
HAB Method 57

Individual Monographs:
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1.

3.12. Preparations made by distillation (Distillates)

DEFINITION
Distillates are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants or dried plants, organic or inorganic substances by steam distillation or water-and-steam distillation. The distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the distillate. This process can be repeated several times in a rhythmic sequence of evaporation/condensation. Distillated preparations can be part of a more complex formulation that is composed by several fractions. Distillated preparations can be used as starting materials or finished products and can be potentised.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia or another limit is justified and authorised.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Distillates and derived dosage forms carry the designation „destillata“.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce preparations made by distillation

APC Method 3.12.1 Preparations made by ethanolic distillation (related to HAB Method 52)

Distillates according to APC method 3.12.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Comminute the plant material. Pour 8 parts of ethanol 90 per cent (*V/V*) over 100 parts of plant mass. Leave to stand in a closed container for at least 24 h, then steam distil, ending the steam distillation when 50 parts of distillate have been collected.

The mother tincture is made from
1 part of distillate and
1 part of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

POTENTISATION

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

APC Method 3.12.2 Preparations made by aqueous distillation

Distillates according to APC Method 3.12.2 are preparations of fresh or dried starting materials from mineral, vegetal and animal source, obtained by aqueous distillation.
Comminute the material. To 1 part of material add water according to the individual monograph, then heat with flame source, ending the distillation when 50 parts of distillated have been collected or according to the individual monograph.

The aqueous distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the final distillate.

3.13. Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold

DEFINITION

Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold are aqueous preparations from fresh or dried herbal drugs or saps from fresh herbal drugs, obtained by fermentation under cold and heat application.

PRODUCTION

Comminute the herbal drug appropriately. Add purified water. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent.
It is also possible to ferment the expressed plant sap or the finely minced fresh plant without addition of purified water. Treat rhythmically with application of heat (generally 37 °C) and cold (generally 4 °C). Where required, express and filter after the time prescribed in the individual monograph. Salts, specific plant ashes, metals or minerals may be added according to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, at 8 – 15 °C.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the name of the salt, metal or mineral added,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation „ferm“ (with water and fermenting agents) or „Rh“ (fermented plant sap without fermenting agents),
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold

HAB Method 21
HAB Method 22
HAB Methods 33
HAB Methods 34
HAB Methods 35
HAB Method 36
HAB Methods 37
HAB Methods 51

APC Method 3.13.1 (related to HAB Method 21)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.1 are prepared from fresh plants generally yielding more than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting and express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm (“Rh”) described below until fermentation is complete.
Each morning, warm the expressed liquid to 35 – 39 °C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain

at this temperature. Each evening, cool the expressed liquid to 2 – 6 °C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain at this temperature.
Stir the liquid for 60 – 200 min during both temperature phases at the beginning, gradually decreasing to 10 min at the end of the fermentation process. Filter as soon as fermentation has ceased.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.13.1 carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*) is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

APC Method 3.13.2 (related to HAB Method 22)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.2 are prepared from fresh plants, generally yielding distinctly less than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting. Subject the plant material to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm ("Rh") for 7 – 10 days. Each morning, warm the plant material to approximately 35 – 39 °C and maintain at this temperature. Each evening, cool the plant material to 2 – 6 °C and maintain at this temperature.
Then express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm ("Rh") as described under method 3.13.1.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.13.2 carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 18 per cent *(V/V)* is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT

Heat treatment can be applied directly to solid starting materials from botanical or zoological origin without addition of a vehicle. The heat treatment may be performed under presence or reduced presence of oxygen.
Solid starting materials obtained by heat include toasted preparations (Tosta), carbons (Carbo) and ashes (Cinis).

4.1. Toasted preparations – Tosta

DEFINITION
Toasted preparations are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or solid, dried animal matter by toasting. Toasted preparations are dry, usually brownish and have an intense and characteristic odour.

The substances to be toasted are crushed, if necessary, and are exposed to a heat source for the prescribed time. During the process water evaporates and the matter becomes brown or brownish. This is achieved through control of the heat supply, usually 170 – 250 °C and by tossing the material during this procedure. The toasted substance is powdered.
Particle size of the raw material, temperature and heating time are prescribed in the individual monograph.

Toasted substances may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
According to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation “tostus/a/um/”, example: Spongia tosta,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce toasted preparations.

According to the individual monograph.
Ph.Helv 17.7.4.1

4.2. Carbons – Carbo

DEFINITION
Carbons are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are dry, brittle, and generally black substances.
The plant or animal matter is heated to a temperature usually above 200 °C under reduced presence of oxygen to produce the carbonised deposit. The carbonised substance is powdered.
Carbons may be potentised according to Ph.Eur 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acidity or Alkalinity,
- Acid-soluble substances,
- Adsorption power,
- Alkali-soluble coloured matter,
- Cyanide,
- Ethanol-soluble substances,
- Fluorescent substances,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*,
- Sulfated ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.14)*,
- Sulfide,
- Total ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.16)*,
- Zinc.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation ”Carbo”, example: Carbo Gentianae,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce carbons

Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.2

4.3. Ashes – Cinis

DEFINITION
Ashes are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are generally fine, amorphous, white, grey, beige or brown powders.

The herbal or animal matter is incinerated generally at a temperature above 500 °C.

Ashes may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acid insoluble substances,
- Arsenic *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.2)*,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*.

ASSAY
Where applicable the Cinis complies with the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container with a desiccant if necessary.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal substance used,
- the designation "Cinis", example: Cinis Tabaci,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce ashes

Ph. Helv. 17.7.4.3

5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE)

Solid preparations from plants are obtained either by drying fresh plants, plant juices or aqueous extracts onto a vehicle.

5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants

DEFINITION
Solid preparations of fresh plants are prepared by drying fresh plant material onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.

PRODUCTION
Comminute the fresh plant material, and mix thoroughly with the vehicle in order to adsorb its liquid part. Dry the mixture gently and mill if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS
Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32):* The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4)*: (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use).

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from fresh plants

Ph.Eur. (2371) Method
4.1.1

APC Method 5.1.1
Preparations according to APC Method 5.1.1 are solid preparations of fresh plants prepared by drying fresh herbal drugs onto lactose monohydrate.
Comminute the plants or parts of plants. To 1 part of the plant material add the required amount of lactose monohydrate, usually 2.9 parts unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly. Dry the moist mixture gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly.

POTENTISATION
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the solid preparation and
7 parts of lactose monohydrate

5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts

DEFINITION
Solid preparations of liquids are prepared by drying plant juices, tinctures, aqueous extracts or solutions or their dilutions onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.
The expressed juice or the tincture from the fresh plant material or the solution is mixed thoroughly with the vehicle. The mixture is dried gently and milled if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS

Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32).* The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4)*. (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use)

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw or starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from liquid extracts/ plant juices
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods (refer to potentisation)
4.1.1
4.1.2

APC Method 5.2.1
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.1 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
Add 1 part of the expressed plant juice or aqueous extract to 1.9 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.2
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.2 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
The expressed plant juice of 1 part of the fresh plant is added to 3 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.3
Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.3 are solid preparations from aqueous extracts prepared by drying aqueous extracts of fresh plants onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
Mix 1 part of the comminuted fresh plants with 0.15 parts of purified water. Then express the mixture.
The expressed aqueous extract is added to 4 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the aqueous extract under reduced pressure.

6. LIQUID DILUTIONS

DEFINITION

Liquid dilutions are prepared by dissolving one or more starting materials in an appropriate vehicle. The liquid obtained may be directly potentised.

PRODUCTION

The starting material is dissolved in the appropriate vehicle. Dissolution may require heating or stirring. The separation of a residue may be necessary.

Where necessary, immediately after the dissolution the first potentisation step is carried out in accordance with the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION

Liquid dilutions are identified using a suitable method.

TESTS

Appearance *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.1, 2.2.2)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits described in the individual monograph.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* Where applicable, the liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY

Where applicable, liquid solutions of chemically

defined starting materials are assayed.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the substance dissolved,
- the quantity dissolved,
- where applicable, the degree of potentisation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid dilutions

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
3.1.1
3.1.2

HAB Methods 5

7. COMPOSITIONS

Compositions are active substances which are obtained when two or more starting materials and/or preparations with or without excipients and/or vehicles are processed together in a pharmaceutical process that will lead to a new substance (unit). The rationale for composing is the anthroposophic understanding of man, nature, substance and processing. Compositions may be directly used as an active substance or can be potentised or diluted for any dosage form.

7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials or preparations by one or more pharmaceutical processes are prepared by combining starting materials in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph using a specified process (e.g. specified mixing, heat treatment, chemical process).

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.1

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Anis-Pyrit, Ferrum-Quarz, Hepar-Magnesium, Hepar sulfuris, Kalium aceticum comp., Plumbum mellitum, Solutio Sacchari comp. (mineral compositions according to the model of a plant).

7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures of one plant by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating two or more mother tinctures of one plant by pharmaceutical processes are prepared from extracts (mother tinctures) of the same plant species harvested at different seasons, i.e. at different stages of development. According to the individual monograph the extracts are combined in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process possibly using specific equipment. Adjustment of concentration, of pH, and of osmolality may be carried out.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.2

HAB Method 32
HAB Method 38

See appendix 2.6, for example Viscum album compositions.

APC Method 7.2.1 (see also APC Method 3.7.1)
Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.1 are produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure:
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24 °C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 96 per cent (*V/V*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture is stored until it will undergo another pharmaceutical process with a second tincture of the same plant.
This procedure is followed for plants harvested in summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in winter.
The mother tincture is a composition, produced by unifying equal parts of the two tinctures.

The mother tincture can be potentised as follows:

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the mother tincture and
7 parts of ethanol 36 per cent (*V/V*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol 18 per cent (*V/V*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations according to APC Method 7.2.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 7.2.1".

APC Method 7.2.2 Compositions of aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof
Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.2 are mother tinctures produced from fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.
The plants or parts of plants are comminuted in a grinder, pressed in appropriate boxes and frozen at – 10 °C to – 30 °C. The plants or parts of plants are combined to a specific formulation: Plants and parts of plants from winter harvest with plants from spring harvest to give the so called winter formulation. Plants from summer harvest with plants from autumn harvest to give the so called summer formulation.
5 parts of frozen plants are extracted for 1 – 4 h at 10 – 20 °C with 95 parts of 0.09 % sodium chloride solution in a container with stirring. The coarse plants or plant parts are separated by centrifugation. The centrifugate is filled up to 100 parts with 0.09 percent sodium chloride solution and filtered. The winter formulation produces the so called winter extract, the summer formulation the so called summer extract. If the extract is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.
The composition is produced by composing three parts of winter extract and one part of summer extract as described below.
The winter extract is stirred in a specially constructed gilded mixing vessel. The summer extract is allowed to drop from the top of the vessel into the vortex of the winter extract. The osmolality is adjusted by adding sodium chloride and the pH is adjusted to 6.1 – 6.3 by adding sodium hydroxide solution. If the composition is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place. The composition (mother tincture) can be used directly or can be used for further dilutions. The addition of antioxidants or substances for pH adjustment is allowed.

Dilutions are obtained by diluting the composition. At a temperature between 10 °C and 25 °C the necessary amount of 0.9 percent sodium chloride solution is stirred in a vessel; the composition is dropped from the top into the vortex. The dilution series is: (Composition + sodium chloride solution) e.g. 3+2 (30 mg), 2+3 (20 mg), 1+4 (10 mg), 1+9 (5 mg), 1+49 (1mg), 1+499 (0.1 mg); 1+4999 (0.01 mg). If the dilution is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL/2 mL of the final preparation.

APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 Compositions of fermented aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof
Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 are mother tinctures produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1.318 parts of purified water, 0.03 parts of sucrose, and 0.002 parts of a Lactobacillus plantarum suspension, 10^9 – 10^{10} cfu/mL and mix thoroughly. Leave to ferment for 3 days at 20 to 27 °C with the exclusion of air. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. If (except for the berries) gentle pressure applied to the plant residue does not achieve a final mass of extract equal to 2 parts, pour a sufficient amount of purified water over the plant residue and express gently. Use the resulting extract to make the extract up to 2 parts. If prescribed in the

individual monograph, adjust the pH to 5.0 – 6.5 by adding sodium hydroxide.
Follow the same procedure for plant material harvested in the summer and for plant material of the same species, harvested in the winter. However, for the winter harvest, process the berries and the other plant parts separately according to the method described above and use 1.328 parts of purified water and 0.02 parts of sucrose. Also, leave the berry mixture to ferment for 4 days.
If the extracts are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).

The composition is produced by composing equal parts of the summer and the combined winter extracts as described below.

Method 7.2.3
Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections.
Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with 3 parts of water for injections.

Method 7.2.4
Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections. Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with a mixture of 0.002 parts of a metal salt trituration from the D4 potentisation step and 2.998 parts of water for injections.

Methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4
Feed the mixture of the winter extracts continuously onto the centre of a rotating disk. At the same time, feed the summer extracts continuously onto the slightly raised edge of the disk. The blended mixture flows continually off over the edge of the disk. Filter the mixture; the filtrate is the mother tincture. If the mother tincture is stored for further processing, it must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).
The dilution series is (composition or dilution + water for injections): 1+9 (20 mg), 1+19 (10 mg, corresponding to a 1:20 dilution); 1+39 (5 mg); 1 + 99 (2 mg);
1 part 1:20 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200 or 1 mg); 1 part 1:200 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:2,000 or 0.1 mg); 1 part 1:2,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:20,000 or 0.01 mg); 1 part 1:20,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200,000 or 0.001 mg); 1 part 1:200,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (0.0001 mg). To prepare the final preparation, add sodium chloride to the water for injections to obtain an isotonic solution.

Compositions produced according to methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 may be potentised according to chapter 8.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL of the final preparation.

STORAGE
Store the mother tincture in a well-closed container at 2 – 8 °C.

7.3. Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures are obtained by combining one or more starting materials with one or more stocks in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.3

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1), Cissus-Ossa.

7.4. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Composition made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by pharmaceutical

processes are prepared according to an individual monograph prescribing the combination of the ingredients in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process using specific equipment.

PRODUCTION
According to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the preparation,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.4

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Onopordum acanthium, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1 – 2 % Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø, see also Plantago lanceolata and Primula.

7.5. Compositions made by co-potentising

DEFINITION
Compositions made by co-potentising are prepared from two or more starting materials and/or preparations (e.g. mother tinctures, potencies) by co-potentising over one or more steps.

PRODUCTION
According to APC Method 8.1 or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name, quantity and potency degree of each ingredient,
- how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.5
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
5.1.1
5.1.2
5.1.5

8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS

Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid or semi-solid potencies) has been carried out for a defined time. The potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse).The preparations are defined by the number of liquid potentising or trituration steps respectively and by the ratio between the vehicle (diluting agent) and the substance to be potentised.

The potentising ratio is usually:
1 part of substance
9 parts of vehicle.

The potentising ratio for co-potentised preparations is usually:
1 part of a mixture of equal parts of active substances
9 parts of vehicle.

LIQUID POTENCIES:
The substance or mixture to be potentised is dissolved in the vehicle in the chosen ratio. Usual vehicles for liquid potencies are water (purified or water for injections), ethanol of various concentrations, glycerol or vegetable oils. Excipients might be necessary, for example to emulsify an aqueous substance into oil. After dissolution, rhythmic succussion is carried out. For the next potentising step one part of the first potency and the prescribed amount of vehicle are brought together and succussed. Further potentising is carried out in likewise manner.

SOLID POTENCIES (TRITURATIONS):
Potencies of solid substances are prepared by trituration of the substance to be potentised usually with lactose monohydrate in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate trituration machine.
Solid potencies can be further potentised in liquid phase, if they are soluble in a vehicle.

SEMI-SOLID POTENCIES:
Semi-solid potencies are prepared by trituration of a liquid or a solid substance to be potentised with an

ointment base in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate trituration machine.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
3.2.1 – 3
4.1.1 – 2
4.2.1 – 2
5.1.1 – 5
5.2

HAB Method 12j

The potentising specifications in Ph.Eur. monograph 2371 of Methods 1.1.1 – 1.1.11, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 – 2.2.4 and 5.1.1 – 5.1.5.

The potentising specifications in HAB methods 5, 11, 15, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53.

The potentising specifications in APC Methods.

8.1. Co-potentised preparations

DEFINITION
Method 8.1 is used for preparing dilutions by co-potentising two or more stocks and/or dilutions thereof, where co-potentisation consists of mixing several stocks or dilutions of stocks then potentising them together in one or more potentisation steps.

PRODUCTION
Co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1 may be prepared from starting materials and/or solutions, potentised preparations and mother tinctures whose method of production is specified by a ratio of 1 part of starting material and 10 parts of extraction solvent.
When a solid potency D4 shall be potentised with liquids, it can be potentised one step according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 3.2, and then be used as D5 for co-potentisation or dilution to a final concentration of 1 ppm.

Co-potentised compositions may be used to produce all types of dosage forms. Co-potentisation of mixtures according to APC Method 8.1 to produce parenteral preparations or eye drops is carried out with water for injections or an isotonic solution as diluting agent.

IDENTIFICATION, TEST, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- where applicable, the ethanol content,
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree, example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

APC Method 8.1.1 (Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 5.1.5)
Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.1 are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1 part of the final 10 parts. Consequently the vehicle is 10 minus n parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1 part of each of the n preparations with 10 minus n parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.1 and derived dosage forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole adding the expressions “rhythmically diluted”.

APC Method 8.1.2 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 5.1.1 and 5.1.2)

Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.2. are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1/n part of the final 10 parts. Consequently the vehicle is 9 parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1/n part of each of the n preparations with 9 parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.2. and derived dosage

forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole.

8.2. Potentising in an ointment base

DEFINITION
Liquid and solid starting materials can be potentised within an ointment base.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.
IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree in the ointment,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

APC Method 8.2.1 (Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials, related to HAB Method 48)
Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials are produced with 1 part of a powdered metal, powdered mineral or a composition containing minerals and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. This potentising step in an ointment base results in the first decimal dilution (D1). The particle size of the powdered solid starting material must be smaller than 100 µm.
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 can be used further to produce ointments according to HAB Method 13.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 carry the designation "APC M" and the resulting decimal dilution "D1".

APC-Method 8.2.2 Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions
Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions are produced with 1 part of a decimal solid or liquid dilution (Dn) and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. The resulting decimal dilution degree is (Dn+1).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2. must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.2.2.

8.3. Triturations

DEFINITION
Preparations according to APC Method 8.3 are triturations of solid substances with lactose monohydrate as potentising vehicle unless otherwise specified in a ratio of 1:10.

PRODUCTION
Triturate using a machine that ensures even trituration. Suitable machines include mixers with rhythmic, pulsating spatial inversion (e.g. "Turbula"), in combination with a sealable mixing vessel and appropriate grinding balls as well as other machines with rotating movements such as the ball mill.
Triturate the whole amount of vehicle with the substance to be potentised.
The trituration time depends on the machine and the chosen parameters. Trituration must be between 15 and 60 minutes. It has to be ensured, that the trituration is homogeneous and that particle size reduction is achieved.

TESTS
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations according to APC Method 8.3 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.3.

9. MIXTURES

DEFINITION
Mixtures are produced from usually two or more active substances.Vehicles and/or excipients may be added. Mixtures contain the sum of the active substances mixed together. Mixtures can also be produced from one active substance and a vehicle. A special manufacturing method is not needed (cf. compositions). Mixtures are used to facilitate the administration of more than one active substance in one single finished product. The mixture itself may be the final dosage form.

Mixtures can be classified into four categories:
9.1. Mixtures of preparations without a vehicle
9.1a. Mixtures of liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1b. Mixtures of solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation.

9.2. Mixtures of preparations with a vehicle
9.2a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2b. Solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation, in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.3. Mixtures of preparations with excipients and vehicles.
9.3a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.3b. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.4. Mixtures of starting materials used as active substances and mother tinctures or preparations with or without vehicles and/or excipients.

RECOMMENDED LABELLING

- the ingredients mixed and their quantity,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mixtures
HAB Method 12
HAB Method 16

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIb

Individual monographs of starting materials and preparations

Table of Content
Part IIb

CYDONIA OBLONGATA, FRUIT

Cydonia oblonga, Fructus
Cydonia

DEFINITION

Fresh, ripe fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill. collected during late summer and autumn.

CHARACTERS

The odour is characterised by a typical flowery scent.

IDENTIFICATION

The pear-shaped variety (var. *pyriformis*) is yellow, fragrant, fuzzy, 7 – 15 cm in diameter. The gentle soft pulp is golden yellow.
The apple-shaped variety (var. *maliformis*) is yellow to greenish yellow, fuzzy, 7-15 cm in diameter and less fragrant. The pulp is characterised by stone cells.
Both varieties obtain five oblong-ovate sepals with serrate margins which are located in a depression. They are completely adnate with the 5 carpels. The 5 loculi of the core generally each contain 5 to 15 or sometimes more brown, cuneate seeds arranged in 2 vertical rows and stuck together with a mucilaginous coat.

TESTS

Foreign matter (*Ph.Eur. 2.8.2*).
As low as possible. The whole batch is checked during manufacture. Foreign matter is sorted out.

Adulteration.
Fruits from Japanese quince [*Choenomeles japonica* (Thunb.) Lindl. ex Spach, syn. *Cydonia japonica* Pers., Rosaceae] and Chinese quince [*Choenomeles speciosa* (Sweet) Nakai, Rosaceae] are 4 to 5 cm in diameter with a smooth peel and being devoid of stone cells.

PREPARATIONS

1. Heat treated aqueous preparation according to the individual monograph,
2. Heat treated preparation with glycerol according to the individual monograph,
3. Tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold according to APC method 3.13 and method HAB 33b.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, HEAT TREATED AQUEOUS TINCTURE 1:2.1

DEFINITION

The heat treated aqueous tincture is prepared from the fresh cut fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC

PRODUCTION

The heat treated aqueous tincture is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to purified water 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70 °C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit are cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of purified water and mix thoroughly. Heat to 65 – 70 °C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45 °C separate by straining the mixture through gauze, filter the resulting liquid and process immediately.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: light yellow, slightly turbid liquid.
Odour: fruity.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. Apply 10 mL onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (particle size 55 – 110 µm, 360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol *R* and 10 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of methanol *R*. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 1 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 5 mg of rutin *R*, 5 mg of hyperoside *R* and 5 mg of scopoletin *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethyl acetate *R* (15:15:70 *V/V/V*).

Application: 20 µL as bands.

Development: over a path of 10 cm.

Drying: at 105 °C for 5 min.

Detection: spray the plate while still warm with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 mL/L solution of macrogol 400 *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.002 to 1.022.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.0 to 4.0.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16)*: min. 2.5 % (3 g initial weight and dry at 105 °C for 2 hours).

STORAGE
If stored it must meet the requirements of sterility, store in well closed containers, protected from light.

CYDONIA OBLONGATA, FRUIT, GLYCEROL EXTRACT WITH HEAT TREATMENT 1:2.1

DEFINITION
The glycerol extract with heat treatment is prepared from the fresh cut fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC.

PRODUCTION
The glycerol extract with heat treatment is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to glycerol (85 per cent) 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70 °C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit is cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of glycerol (85 per cent) and mix thoroughly. Heat to 60 – 70 °C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45 °C separate the mixture by straining through gauze, then filter if necessary.

CHARACTERS
Appearance: light yellow, slightly turbid, viscous liquid.
Odour: fruity.

IDENTIFICATION
Thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. To 5 mL add 15 mL of water *R*. Apply the mixture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (particle size 55 – 110 µm, 360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol *R* and 10 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of methanol *R*. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of rutin *R*, 10 mg of hyperoside *R* and 2 mg of scopoletin *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethylacetate *R* (15:15:70 *V/V/V*).

Application: 20 µL as bands.

Development: over a path of 10 cm.

Drying: at 105 °C for 5 min.

Detection: spray the plate while still warm with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 mL/L solution of macrogol 400 *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.170 to 1.185.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.5 to 5.0.

STORAGE

Protected from light.

CYDONIA OBLONGATA, FRUIT, MOTHERTINCTURE OBTAIND BY RHYTHMIC APPLICATION OF HEAT AND COLD CYDONIA OBLONGATA E FRUCTIBUS FERM 33B

DEFINITION

The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared from the fresh minced fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC.

PRODUCTION

The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared according to HAB method 33b (APC method 3.13).

CHARACTERS

Appearance: slightly yellow liquid.
Odour: sour, fruity.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.27*)
Test solution. Apply 2 mL of the tincture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (sorbens mass 500 mg, 3 mL reservoir) preconditioned sequentially with 2 mL of methanol *R* and 2 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of ether *R*. The eluate is evaporated to dryness. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of caffeic acid *R* and 10 mg of hyperoside *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethyl acetate *R* (10:10:80 *V/V/V*).

Application: 60 µL of test solution and 10 µL of reference solution, as bands.

Development: over a path of 8 cm.

Drying: in air.

Detection: spray with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 g/L solution of macrogol 400 *R* in methanol *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm after 30 min.

Results: See below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Caffeic acid: a light blue zone	A light blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange yellow zone	A light blue zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.001 to 1.013.

Dry residue (*based on Ph.Eur. 2.2.32 d*): minimum 1.0 per cent, determined on 1.000 g of mother tincture by drying for 4 to 5 hours at 105 °C.

Calculate the dry residue (per cent *m/m*) from the expression:

$$\frac{(m_3 - m_1)}{m_2} \cdot 100$$

m_1 = mass of the crucible used, in grams;
m_2 = mass of the mother tincture used, in grams;
m_3 = mass of the crucible containing the mother tincture after drying, in grams.

pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 3.0 to 4.2.

STORAGE

In a well closed container at a temperature of max 15 °C.

LEVICO WATER

Aqua Levici
Levico

DEFINITION

Naturally occurring spring water from the source Levico (Italy).
Content:
- *Arsenic*: 4 – 8 ppm
- *Iron*: 1000 – 2500 ppm

CHARACTERS

Appearance: colourless to yellowish-brown liquid, usually clear, a slight sediment may occur.
Odour: almost odourless.

IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification of arsenic by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.
Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.
B. Identification of iron by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.
Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.
C. Identification of copper by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).
Test solution. To 1.0 mL add 0.200 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 10.0 mL with water *R*.
Reference solution. Prepare the reference solutions (0.5, 1.0, 2.0 and 4.0 ppm Cu) using copper standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available copper standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.
Source: copper hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.5 nm.
Wavelength: 324.8 nm.
Flame: air-acetylene.
Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.
D. To 0.5 mL add 4.5 mL of water *R*. The solution gives reaction a on sulfates (*Ph.Eur. 2.3.1*).

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.004 to 1.015.
pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 1.5 to 2.5.

ASSAY

Arsenic: 4 ppm to 8 ppm.
Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).

Test solution. To 0.200 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.
Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppb As) using arsenic standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available arsenic standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.
Source: arsenic hollow-cathode lamp using a trans-miss$ion band preferably of 0.5 nm.
Wavelength: 193.7 nm.
Atomisation device: graphite furnace.
Calculate the content of arsenic in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \left(\frac{A_1 \cdot F_1}{F_2 \cdot}\right) / 1000$$

A_1: measured concentration of arsenic in µg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.200 mL

Iron: 1000 ppm to 2500 ppm.
Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).
Test solution. To 0.500 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.
Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppm Fe) using iron standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available iron standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.
Source: iron hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.2 nm.
Wavelength: 372.0 nm.
Flame: air-acetylene.
Calculate the content of iron in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \frac{A_2 \cdot F_1}{F_2 \cdot}$$

A_2: measured concentration of iron in mg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.500 mL

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

PREPARATIONS
According to Ph.Eur., monograph 2371 Methods 3.1.1, 3.1.2.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART III

Dosage forms

Table of Content
Part III

Dosage forms
Principally an anthroposophic medicinal product can be administered in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms, with or without excipients.
A dosage form of an anthroposophic medicinal product complies with any relevant dosage form monograph and any relevant test for that dosage form as described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the EU Member States.

Main dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products and concerning references to official pharmacopoeias:

Main dosage forms for oral use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Capsules	Capsules	Ph.Eur. (*0016*)
Granules	Granules	Ph.Eur. (*0499*)
Homoeopathic Pillules, coated	Globuli velati	Ph.Eur. (*1038, 2786*), HAB Method 39
Homoeopathic Pillules, impregnated	Pillules	Ph.Eur. (*1038*, *2079*), HAB Method 10
Tablets	Tablets	Ph.Eur. (*1038*, *0478*), HAB Method 9
Powders, oral	Trituration	Ph.Eur. (*1165*)
Oral drops	Oral drops	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Syrups	Syrups	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Oral solution	Mother tincture, Dilution	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)

Main dosage forms for cutaneous use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Creams	Creams	Ph.Eur. (*0132*)
Ointments	Ointments	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Methods 13 and 48
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Method 13
Lotions	Lotions	B.P., Ph.Eur. (*0927*)
Oils	Oils	HAB Methods 12, Ph.Eur. (*0927*)

Main dosage forms for cutaneous use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Liquid preparations (other)	Tinctures for external use, external emulsions, suspensions	Ph.Eur. (*0927*), HAB Methods 12
Powders	Powders	Ph.Eur. (*1166*)

Main dosage forms for auricular use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Ear drops	Ear drops	Ph.Eur. (*0652*)

Main dosage forms for ophthalmic use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Eye drops	Eye drops	Ph.Eur. (*1163*), HAB Method 15
Semi-solid eye preparations	Eye ointments	Ph.Eur. (*1163*)

Main dosage forms for nasal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Nasal drops, solution	Nasal drops	Ph.Eur. (*0676*), HAB Method 45
Nasal spray, solution	Nasal spray	Ph.Eur. (*0676*)

Main dosage forms for oromucosal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Solutions	Solutions	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Sprays	Sprays	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Pillules	Pillules	Ph.Eur. (*1038, 2079, 2786*), HAB Methods 10 and 39

Main dosage forms for vaginal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Semi-solid vaginal preparations	Globules	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Vaginal tablets	Vagitories	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)

Main dosage forms for rectal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Suppositories	Suppositories	Ph.Eur. (*1145*), HAB Method 14

Main dosage forms for parenteral use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Injections	Liquid dilutions for injection, ampoules, Solutions for injection	Ph.Eur. (*0520*), HAB Method 11

APC Pillules containing lactose
(related to HAB Method 10)
APC Pillules containing lactose are pillules made by applying one or more potentised liquid preparations to saccharose pillules, which may contain up to 5 per cent of lactose. The potentising ratio usually is 1:100 (*v/m* or *m/m)*. The ethanol concentration of the potentised liquid preparation(s) is at least 70 per cent (*V/V*). If this is not the case and interactions are excluded, the last potentisation step for decimal potentised preparations must be carried out with ethanol of at least 70 per cent (*V/V*). In case incompatibilities are expected, use ethanol of lower concentration.
Preformed pillule sizes Ph.Eur. 3 and 6:
Ph.Eur. size 3: 110 to 130 pillules weigh 1 g
Ph.Eur. size 6: 20 to 28 pillules weigh 1 g.
Dry the pillules after impregnation in air.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
the designation states:
the amount of potentised preparation(s),
the potency degree,
the potentising ratio in case other than 1:100.

INDEX LIST OF TERMS OF PART I, II and III

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

T

V

W

Z

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IV
Appendices

Table of Content
Part IV

Note concerning appendix 2.3.
Animal substances marked with "*" belong to category A materials according to "Note for guidance on minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products" if sourced e.g. from cattle *Bos taurus* L. Though sourcing from animals below 6 months of age from herds not fed with meat bone meal has been practice up to now in the field of concerning anthroposophic quality management, pharmaceutical manufacturers must continuously adapt their sourcing to the requirements of the Note for guidance, such as changing the donor animal. The APC Committee needs to reflect the existing practice and will adapt to implemented changes.

References concerning nomenclature in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.

Erhardt W, Götz E, Bödeker N, Seybold S. Zander:
Handwörterbuch der Pflanzennamen.
Stuttgart: Eugen Ulmer; 2008.

Roberts WL, Rapp GR Jr, Weber J.
Encyclopedia of Minerals.
New York: Van Nostrand; 1974.

Schindler H, Helma F.
Tiere in der Pharmazie und Medizin.
Stuttgart: Hippokrates-Verlag; 1961.

Teuscher E.
Biogene Arzneimittel.
Stuttgart: Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH; 1997.

Note concerning the references for use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.
The references given in the columns to the right in the appendices 2.1 to 2.6 aim to provide evidence, that the particular starting material is known and has been part of the medicinal tradition in anthroposophic medicine.

Where available, the monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger) have been referred to. Some starting materials are mentioned in monographs of combined products only (e.g. Amethyst in Tropaeolum comp.)
Not all starting materials are mentioned in the Commission C monographs, because on the one hand its work stopped in 1994 after the 5th amendment of the German Drug law prior to completion work. On the other hand a number of starting materials in the lists are only known in the anthroposophic medicine tradition in countries other than Germany. The Commission C monographs also refer to specific and composed active substances as well as existing pharmaceutical products. A number of references from other sources may refer generically to particular raw or starting materials, sometimes without linking to specific active substances. The latter references show that the raw or starting material has been considered in therapeutic and pharmaceutical grounds in anthroposophic medicine. They may however also refer to specific active substances.

Where there is no reference, the particular starting material has not yet been presented or discussed in publications. However anthroposophic pharmaceutical manufacturers place medicinal products on the market obtained from those starting materials. The IAAP sees it as its task to promote the writing of publications, to support the relevance of the starting material in anthroposophic medicine. Much work still needs to be done.

References concerning the use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.7.

Der Merkurstab
(Zeitschrift für anthroposophische Medizin – Journal of Anthroposophic Medicine).
Munich: Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany).

Gardin N, Schleier R.
Vademecum, medicamentos antroposoficos.
São Paulo-SP: João de Barra Editora Ltda; 2009.
Portugese. Abbr. ABMA Vademecum

Glöckler M.
Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie
(Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products). Stuttgart: Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft; 2010. Abbr. Glöckler

International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, IVAA.
Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products.
Brussels: printed in APC Appendix I; 2013.

Monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger). Publication as compilation: Anthroposophische Arzneimittel, Aufbereitungsmonographien der Kommission C, published by Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany registered association) on behalf of the Medical Section at the Goetheanum, Dornach/ Switzerland; 1999.

Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. Munich (Germany); 2013; 3rd edition 2013. Abbr. Vademecum

Les Associations francaises de médecine anthroposophique: Répertoire de médecine d'orientation anthroposophique. Edition Juin 2016. (abbr. Répertoire de med. anthr.)

IVAA Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztegesellschaften
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

IVAA Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin
Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products

Anthroposophic medicinal products containing preparations from starting materials of animal origin belong to the range of anthroposophic therapeutics.1

Most of these starting materials and/or the anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are mentioned in anthroposophic medical literature or in official regulatory documents. A certain number of these however are not mentioned in such references, although belonging to the range
of anthroposophically used starting materials of animal origin. The anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are available to doctors.2

This statement confirms the anthroposophic therapeutic usage and relevance of these starting materials.3

The starting materials of animal origin are listed on the following papers.4

For the IVAA

Dr. Peter Zimmermann
Dr. Andreas Arendt

15.02.2013

List updated 1.03.2018
Starting materials with specific references published since 15.02.2013 have been deleted from the following addendum to the IVVA statement.

[1] Girke M. Internal Medicine. 1st edition. Berlin: Salumed Verlag; 2016.
[2] Jütte R. Organpräparate in der Geschichte der „Schulmedizin", der Homöopathie und der Anthroposophischen Medizin. Der Merkurstab 2009; 1: 49–60.
[3] Roemer F. Sommer M. Zur Bedeutung der potenzierten Organpräparate in der anthroposophischen Therapierichtung. Der Merkurstab 1998; Sonderheft Organpräparate.
[4] Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. 4. edition. Filderstadt (Germany); 2017

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Aorta	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Aorta from the rabbit
Aranea avicularis	*Avicularia avicularia L*	Whole bird spider
Arteria basilaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria basilaris from the calf
Arteria brachialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria brachialis from the calf
Arteria coeliaca	*see Truncus coeliacus*	
Arteria pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf
Arteria renalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria renalis from the calf
Articulatio cubiti	*Bos taurus L.*	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf
Articulatio radiocarpea	*Bos taurus L.*	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf
Articulatio temporomandibularis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the os mandibulare and of the os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intercarpeae	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Atlas	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf
Axis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Axis (2. cervical) from the calf
Cartilago articularis coxae	*Bos taurus L.*	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf
Cervix uteri	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the neck of the womb from the cow
Circulus arteriosus cerebri	*Bos taurus L.*	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf
Coccus cacti	*Dactylopius coccus Costa*	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa
Columna anterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf
Columna posterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf
Cornu Caprae ibecis	*Capra ibex L.*	Horn from the ibex
Dactylopius coccus	see *Coccus cacti*	
Dens	*Bos taurus L.*	Teeth from the calf
Diencephalon	*Bos taurus L.*	Diencephalon from the calf

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Dura mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Dura mater encephali from the calf
Endocardium	*Bos taurus L.*	Endocardium from the calf
Epididymis	*Bos taurus L.*	Left epididymis from the bull
Erytrocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse
Galea aponeurotica	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf
Glandula parotis	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandula suprarenalis (cortex) from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	*Bos taurus L.*	Medulla glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands from the calf
Gyrus cinguli	*Bos taurus L.*	Gyrus cinguli from the calf
Hepar	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Liver from the rabbit
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf
Lingua	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf
Liquor cerebrospinalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Liquor cerebrospinalis from the calf
Mephitis putorius	*Mephitis mephitis Schreb.*	Liquid secretion of anal glands from Mephitis mephitis Schreb.
Moschus	*Moschus moschiferus L.*	Secretion of bursa from male Moschus moschiferus L.
Musculi glutaei	*Bos taurus L.*	Gluteal muscles from the calf
Musculus soleus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the musculus soleus-complex, musculus soleus, musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, musculus gastrocnemius from the calf
Mygale avicularis	*see Aranea avicularis*	
Nervus abducens	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus abducens from the calf
Nervus accessorius	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus accessorius from the calf
Nervus femoralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus femoralis from the calf
Nervus hypoglossus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf
Nervus pudendus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus pudendus from the calf
Nervus radialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus radialis from the calf
Nervus tibialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus tibialis from the calf
Nervus ulnaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus ulnaris from the calf

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Oesophagus	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Oesophagus from the pig
Ossicula auditus	*Bos taurus L.*	Auditory bones from the calf
Papillae duodeni	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig
Pars pallida	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf
Patella	*Bos taurus L.*	Patella from the calf
Penis	*Bos taurus L.*	Penis from the bull
Pia mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Pia mater encephali from the calf
Plexus lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Plexus lumbalis from the calf
Plexus rectalis	*see Plexus haemorrhoidalis*	
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of tissue from the pelvis renalis and medulla renalis from the calf
Sclera	*Bos taurus L.*	Sclera from the calf
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-complex; sinus cavernosus, nervus opticus, nervus oculomotorius, nervus trochlearis, nervus trigeminus and nervus abducens from the calf
Thrombocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse
Tonsilla pharyngea	*Bos taurus L.*	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf
Trachea	*Bos taurus L.*	Trachea from the calf
Truncus coeliacus	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria coeliaca (Truncus coeliacus) from the calf
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig
Tunica mucosa recti	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig
Ureter	*Bos taurus L.*	Ureter from the calf
Vagina	*Bos taurus L.*	Vagina from the cow
Valva trunci pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf
Valvula mitralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva mitralis from the calf
Vena cava	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the vena cava cranialis and vena cava caudalis from the calf
Vena portae	*Bos taurus L.*	Vena portae from the calf
Vertebra cervicalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf
Vertebra coccygea	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra coccygea from the calf
Vertebra lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf

APPENDIX 2.1

List of minerals, rocks and natural waters

Additional Information, see p. 15

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Agate water	(Achatwasser)		Water existing inside an undamaged Agate geode		Ph.Eur. 3.1.2		Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Amber	Succinum (Bernstein)		Fossilized tree resin	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and 3.1.1 or 3.1.2), 4.1.2	Corpus vitreum/Succinum; Olibanum comp./Succinum; Rosmarinus comp.; Stannum/ Succinum; Succinum	
Amethyst	(Amethyst)		A violet variety of quartz (SiO_2)		API, Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Tropaeolum comp.	
Antimonite			See Stibnite				
Apatite	Apatit	Apatite	The natural mineral (calcium fluor-phosphate chem.: $Ca_5[(PO_4)_3, (OH,F,Cl)]$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apatit; Apatit/Conchae; Apatit/ Phosphorus comp.; Apatit/Stannum; Cerebellum comp. ; Conchae/ Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum praeparatum comp.; Stannum comp.	
Aqua maris	(Meerwasser)		See Seawater				
Aragonite	(Aragonit)	Aragonite	The natural mineral (calcium carbonate; chem.: $CaCO_3$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Arandisite	(Arandisit)	Arandisite	The natural mineral (complex tin silicate)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Arandisit	Vademecum
Argentite	Argentit	Argentite	The natural mineral	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Argentit	Vademecum
Arsenopyrite	Arsenopyrit	Arsenopyrite	The natural mineral (arsenic-iron sulfide; chem.: FeAsS)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Arsenopyrit
Aurum metallicum naturale	(Gold, gediegen)	Or natif	The natural mineral (naturally occurring gold with traces of other elements)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and 3.2.2), 4.1.2	Aurum metallicum; Aurum/Prunus	
Barysilite	Barysilit		The natural mineral (Lead manganese silicate;chem.: $Pb_8Mn(Si_2O_7)_3$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barysilit	Vademecum
Berthierite	Berthierit	Berthierite	The natural mineral (antimony-iron sulfide; chem.: $FeSb_2S_4$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Bolus alba	(Bolus)		See Kaolinite				
Cassiterite	(Kassiterit, Zinnstein)	Cassitérite	The natural mineral (tin oxide; chem.: SnO_2)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Kassiterit	Vademecum: Kassiterit
Cerite	(Cerit)		The natural mineral (complex silicate of rare earth elements (cerium, lanthanum and others) and calcium, magnesium and iron)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cor/Crataegus comp.	Vademecum

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Cerussite	Cerussit	Cérussite	The natural mineral (lead carbonate; chem.: $PbCO_3$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for production of Plumbum silicicum	Cerussit ; Plumbum silicicum	Vademecum
Chalcedony	(Chalcedon)		The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and then 3.1.1), 4.1.2		
Chalcocite	(Chalkosin)	Chalcosine	The natural mineral (copper sulfide; chem.: Cu_2S)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2	Chalkosin; Thyreoidea comp.	
Chalcopyrite	(Chalkopyrit)	Chalcopyrite	The natural mineral (copper-iron sulfide; chem.: $CuFeS_2$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Chlorargyrite	(Chlorargyrit, Hornerz, Silberhornerz)		The natural mineral (silver chloride; chem.: AgCl)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.	
Chrysolite	(Chrysolith)	Chrysolithe	The natural mineral (magnesium-iron silicate; chem.: $(Mg,Fe)_2SiO_4$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Chrysolith; Chrysolith comp.	Vademecum
Chrysoprase	(Chrysopras)		The natural mineral (silicic acid with small amounts of nickel)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2		
Cinnabar	(Zinnober)	Cinnabaris naturale	The natural mineral (mercury sulfide; chem.: HgS)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Agropyron comp.; Barium comp. ; Pyrit/Zinnober; Zinnober; Zinnober comp.	Vademecum
Cuprite	Cuprit	Cuprite	The natural mineral (copper oxide; chem.: Cu_2O)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprit	
Diaspore	(Diaspor)		The natural mineral (aluminium oxide hydroxide; chem.: AlOOH)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Dioptase	Dioptas	Dioptase	The natural mineral (copper silicate; chem.: $Cu_6Si_6O_{18}·6H_2O$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Dioptas	
Dyscrasite	Dyskrasit	Dyscrasite	The natural mineral	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Dyskrasit	
Emerald	(Smaragd)		A green variety of beryl (aluminium-beryllium silicate; chem.: $Al_2Be_3(Si_6O_{18})$, coloured by trace amounts of chromium and sometimes vanadium		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Ferrum sidereum	(Meteoreisen)	Ferrum sidereum	See Iron meteorite				
Ferrum silicicum naturale			See Nontronite				

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Flint	(Flint, Feuerstein)	Silex	The natural mineral (chem.: silicic acid SiO_2)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2 (in Lapis cancri/ Flintstein together with Lapis cancri), Raw material for preparing Silex - Lapis cancri solutus (see app. 2.6)	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	
Fluorite	Flussspat	Fluorite	The natural mineral (calcium fluoride; chem.: CaF_2)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Fluorit; Ratanhia comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Salvia comp.	
Galena	Bleiglanz	Galène	The natural mineral (lead sulfide; chem.: PbS)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Betula/Mandragora comp.; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Galenit/ Retina comp.; Retina comp.; Retina/ Secale comp.	
Garnet	(Granat)		The natural mineral: Almandine (iron-aluminium silicate; chem.: $Fe_3Al_2(SiO_4)_3$) or other varieties		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(1): 57-58
(Glacies Mariae)			See selenite				
Gneiss	(Gneis)		The natural pale rock (Gneiss from Gastein (A); consisting of quartz, feldspar, mica and others); syn. Lapis albus		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Granite	(Granit)	Granit	The natural rock (consisting of quartz, feldspar and mica and others)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/ Uterus comp. ; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Graphite	(Graphites) Graphit	Graphites	The natural mineral (hexagonal Carbon; chem.: C, with traces of iron and other elements)	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites; Graphites; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato; Tropaeolum comp.	
Halite	Halit		The natural mineral (sodium chloride; chem.: NaCl)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, API	Halit	
Hekla Lava			See Lava				
Hematite	Hämatit	Hématite	The natural mineral (irone oxide; chem.: Fe_2O_3)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2 raw material for preparations acc. to HAB 37a		

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Hyacinth			See Zircon				
Hydrargyrum metallicum naturale	(Quecksilber)		See Mercurius vivus naturalis				
Iron meteorite	Ferrum sidereum (Meteoreisen)	Ferrum sidereum	The natural meteoric iron (a kind of alloy with iron, nickel and cobalt)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apatit/Phosphorus comp.; Aurum/ Ferrum sidereum ; Crataegus/ Ferrum sidereum/Saccharum tostum; Ferrum sidereum; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum sidereum/ Pankreas; Meteoreisen/Phosphor/ Quarz	Vademecum
Jasper	(Jaspis)		A red variety of chalcedony (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2 with iron oxide)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Kaolinite	(Kaolin, weißer Ton)	Kaolin lourd	The natural mineral (aluminium silicate; chem.: $Al_4[(OH)_8/Si_4O_{10}]$; syn.: China clay	Ph.Eur.	API, Excipient	Bolus alba comp.; Bolus Eucalypti comp.	
Kassiterite			See Cassiterite				
Katoptrite	(Katoptrit)		The natural mineral (complex manganese-antimony-iron silicate)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Kieserite	(Kieserit)	Kiesérite	The natural mineral (magnesium sulfate; chem.: $MgSO_4 \cdot H_2O$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see monograph: D1 with water)	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Kieserit; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.	
Lapis albus	(Gneiss)		See Gneiss				
Lapis sectilis	(Tonschifer)		See Argillaceous Shale				
Lava	Hekla Lava (Lava)	Hekla lava	The natural rock from volcano Hekla (Iceland) with a content of at least 50 % silicon dioxide, SiO_2 (Mr 60.1) and at least 18 % iron(III) oxide	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Levico water	Levico		Mineral water from the source Levico, Italy	APC	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Levico; Levico comp.	Vademecum
Magnesite	Magnesit	Magnésite	The natural mineral (magnesium carbonate; chem.: $MgCO_3$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Magnesit; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	Vademecum
Malachite	Malachit	Malachite	The natural mineral (basic copper carbonate; chem.: $Cu_2(CO_3)(OH)_2$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, raw material for the production of API (for e.g.Viscum Mali c. Cupro, app. 2.6)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Malachit	Vademecum

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Marble	(Marmor)	Marbre	The natural grained, white rock (mainly consisting of calcite)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, raw material for the production of Solutio Silicea comp. (app. 2.6)	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/ Solutio Siliceae comp.; Marmor/ Stibium; Solutio Silicea comp.	Vademecum: Marmor/Stibium
Mercurius vivus naturalis	Mercurius vivus; (Quecksilber, gediegen)	Mercure métallique PPH	Naturally occurring mercury with 99,5-100,5% Hg	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Glandula suprarenalis/Mercurius; Mercurius vivus; Mercurius vivus comp.; Mercurius vivus/ Eucaplyti aetheroleum; Thuja comp.	Vademecum
Meteoreisen			See Ferrum sidereum				
Nontronite	Nontronit	Nontronite	The natural mineral (complex iron silicate)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Nontronit	Vademecum
Olivenite	Olivenit	Olivénite	The natural mineral (basic copper arsenate; chem.: $Cu_2AsO_4(OH)$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Olivenit; Senecio comp.	Vademecum
Olivine			See Chrysolite				
Onyx	Onyx	Onyx	A black-white striped variety of chalcedony (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Gnaphalium comp. ; Onyx	
Opal	(Opal)		The natural mineral (silicic acid, containing water)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), 4.1.2		Vademecum
Orthoclase	(Orthoklas)		The natural mineral (potassium-aluminium silicate; chem.: $KAlSi_3O_8$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Orthoklas	
Pallasite	(Pallasit)		Stone-Iron-Meteorite (olivine crystals in an iron-nickel matrix)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Pharmacolite	Pharmakolith	Pharmacolithe	The natural mineral	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pharmakolith comp.	Vademecum
Phosphorocalcite	(Phosphorochalcit, Pseudomalachit)	Phosphorochalcite	The natural mineral (alkaline copper phosphate; chem.: $Cu_5[(OH)_4/(PO_4)_2]$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum
Platinum	(Platin, gediegen)	Platina	The natural mineral (naturally occurring platinum with traces of other elements)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Basilicum comp.	
Pyrargyrite	(Pyrargyrit)	Pyrargyrite	The natural mineral (silver-antimony sulfide; chem.: Ag_3SbS_3)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Pyrite	Pyrit	Pyrite de fer	The natural mineral (iron sulfide; chem.: FeS_2)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Anis-Pyrit ; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Pyrit; Pyrit/ Zinnober	Vademecum
Pyrolusite	Pyrolusit	Pyrolusite	The natural mineral (manganese dioxyde; chem.: MnO_2)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1; 4.1.2		
Pyromorphite	Pyromorphit	Pyromorphite	The natural mineral (lead phosphate; chem.: $Pb_5(PO_4)_3Cl$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pyromorphit	
Quartz	Quarz	Silicea naturale	The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API, raw material for the production of other chemical entities (app. 2.6)	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Argentum/Berberis comp.; Argentum/Quarz ; Arnica/ Echinacea comp. ; Belladonna/ Quarz ; Berberis/Quarz ; Cartilago/ Echinacea comp. ; Conjunctiva comp.; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/ Solutio Siliceae comp.; Echinacea/ Quarz comp.; Endometrium comp.; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum/ Quarz ; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Meteoreisen/ Phosphor/Quarz; Nicotiana/Quarz ; Ovarium comp.; Oxalis/Quarz comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Primula comp. ; Quarz; Quarz/ Resina Laricis; Quarz/Secale; Sanguinaria comp.; Silicea comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.; Tartarus stibiatus comp.	Vademecum
Realgar	(Realgar)	Réalgar	The natural mineral (arsenic sulfide; chem.: As_4S_4)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Realgar	Vademecum
Rose quartz	(Rosenquarz)		The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2); syn.: Quarz rosae		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Rubellite	(Rubellit)		Pink to red tourmaline (complex silicate with aluminium, boron, fluorine, lithium, iron, sodium and other elements)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Rubellit
Ruby	(Rubin)		The natural red corundum (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of Chromium)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Sal Maris			See Sea salt				
Sapphire	(Saphir)		The natural blue mineral corundum (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of iron and/or titanium)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Scorodite	Skorodit	Scorodite	The natural mineral (basic iron arsenate; chem.: $FeAsO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Borago comp.; Cerebellum comp. ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Skorodit; Skorodit comp.	Vademecum
Sea salt	(Meersalz)	Sodium (chlorure de) naturel pph, Sel marin non raffiné de l	Sea salt (chem.: complex mixture with chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components); syn.: Sal Maris	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with water), API (in Sal Maris comp.)	Sal Maris comp.	
Seawater	Aqua maris	Aqua marina	Oceanic water (chem.: dissolved mixture of chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with ethanol 18%), 3.1.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Aqua Maris/ Prunus spinosa, Summitates	Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Selenite	(Glacies marias, Gips, Marienglas)		The natural mineral: Transparent, colourless, variety of Gypsum (calcium sulfate; chem.: $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the production of Kalium chloratum comp.		
Siderite	Siderit	Sidérite	The natural mineral (iron carbonate; chem.: $FeCO_3$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Avena/Conchae comp.; Siderit	Vademecum
Silex		Silex	See Flint				
Silicea naturale		Silicea naturale	See Quartz				
Smaragd			See Emerald				

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Stibnite	Antimonit, (Grauspießglanz)	Stibine	The natural mineral (antimony sulfide; chem.: Sb_2S_3)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Achillea comp.; Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Antimonit ; Antimonit comp.; Antimonit/Anisum; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Cartilago/Mandragora comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna; Vitis comp.	Vademecum: Antimonit
Succinum			See Amber				
Sulfur	(Schwefel)	Sulfur	see Sulfur aph (App. 2.4)			Sulfur	
Sylvite	(Sylvin)		The natural mineral (potassium chloride; chem.: KCl)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1		Vademecum: Sylvin
(Terra medicinalis)	(Heilerde)		Dried, finely-divided, naturally occurring clay and silt with a varied composition of aluminium oxide, silica, iron oxide and limestone; Terra medicinalis		Excipient	Placenta/Tropaeolum	
Thenardite	(Thenardit)	Thénardite	The natural mineral (sodium sulfate; chem.: Na_2SO_4)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with water), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Topaz	(Topas)		The natural mineral (aluminium-fluorin silicate; chem.: silicate of aluminium and fluorine, $Al_2[(F,OH)_2/SiO_4.)]$		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Trona	(Trona)		The natural mineral (sodium carbonate-hydrogen carbonate; chem.: $Na_3(CO_3)(HCO_3)\cdot 2H_2O$		raw material for the production of compositions, e.g. Solutio Silicea comp. (app. 2.6)	Aqua Maris comp.; Cinis Arnicae comp.; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	
Vivianite	Vivianit	Vivianite	The natural mineral (iron phosphate; chem.: $Fe_2(PO_4)_2\cdot 8H_2O$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Gelsemium comp.; Levisticum comp.; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.; Vivianit	Vademecum

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
						KC Monograph	Other
Witherite	Witherit	Withérite	The natural mineral (Barium carbonate; chem.: $BaCO_3$)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit	Vademecum
Zinnober			See Cinnabar				

APPENDIX 2.2

List of starting materials of botanical origin

Additional Information, see p. 15

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Abies alba Mill.	Fresh tops of Abies alba Mill.		HAB 33d	Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica	
Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC	Young, fresh, leafy branches of Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC)	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Abrotanum	see Artemisia abrotanum L.				
Absinthium	see Artemisia absinthium L.				
Acetum Vini	see Vitis vinifera L.				
Acetum Vini destillatum	see Vitis vinifera L.				
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh, leaves of Achillea millefolium L., collected in Spring		Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Millefolium / Hypericum	
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh aerial parts of Achillea millefolium L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33d	Achillea comp.; Cantharis comp.	
Achillea millefolium L.	Whole or cut, dried flowering tops of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), API	Centaurium comp.; Cichorium/ Taraxacum comp.; Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis	
Achillea millefolium L.	Dried flowers of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph. Helv.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50 %), aqueous extraction together with other dried herbal drugs	Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Verbascum comp.	
Aconitum napellus L.	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Aconitum napellus L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Aconitum napellus L.	Fresh whole plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Aconitum napellus; Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./ Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Aconitum/Bryonia; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Aconitum napellus L.	Dried tubers of Aconitum napellus L.		HAB 12d, 12e, 12g	Aconitum napellus; Aconitum/ Nicotiana comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Aconitum napellus L.	Fresh underground parts of Aconitum napellus L.		HAB 33c	Aconitum comp.; Aconitum napellus; Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Aconitum/China comp. ; Bryonia comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Acorus calamus L	Peeled, dried rhizome of Acorus calamus L., with roots and leaf residues removed.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8, 1.2.12, aqueous extraction together with other plants	Calamus, Rhizoma ; Gentiana/Zingiber comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Acorus calamus L.	Fresh underground parts of Acorus calamus L.		HAB 33d	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Bolus alba comp.	
Actaea racemosa	see Cimicifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.				
Actaea spicata L.	Fresh, underground parts of Actaea spicata L. collected after shots have emerged, but before flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		
Adonis vernalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Adonis vernalis L. collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.2.4	Adonis comp.; Adonis/Scilla comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh bark from younger branches of Aesculus hippocastanum L.		HAB 12k (Decoctum LA 10%)	Aesculus, Cortex; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh buds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.		For Sal maris comp. 1 part of buds is extracted with 2 parts of oil.	Sal Maris comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Freshly peeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 12g, 34c	Aesculus, Semen; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago comp.; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Hirudo comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh unpeeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Dried bark from branches of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Achillea comp.; Aesculus, Cortex; Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Aesculus, Cortex/Rosmarini aetheroleum; Aesculus/Lavandula siccata ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.; Stibium comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Dried seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	DAB	HAB 12g, 12m	Aesculus, Semen; Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Agaricus bulbosus	see Amanita phalloides (Vaill. ex Fr.) Link.	Ph.Eur.			
Agaricus muscarius	see Amanita muscaria (L.) Pers.				
Amanita muscaria (L. ex Fr.) Hook.	The red skin (cutis rubra) of the fruiting body of Amanita muscaria (L. ex Fr.) Hook.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%)		
Agnus castus	see Vitex agnus-castus L.				
Agropyron repens (L.) P. Beauv.	Whole or cut, washed and dried rhizome of Agropyron repens (L.) P. Beauv. (Elymus repens [L.] Gould); the adventitious roots are removed	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Agropyron repens	see Elymus repens (L.) Gould				
Alcea rosea L. (Althaea rosea (L.) Cav.	Dried, fully developed flowers with calices of Alcea rosea L.		HAB 12g	Malva comp.	
Alfalfa	see Medicago sativa L.				
Allium cepa L.	Fresh bulbs of Allium cepa L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	HAB Allium cepa (and Ph.Eur. 1.1.3), HAB 34a, Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (see monograph: Ethanol 45%) (Ph.fr.)	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Archangelica comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Cartilago comp. ; Cepa; Kastanien-Haartonikum; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.; Stannum/Symphytum comp. ; Symphytum comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Allium sativum L.	Fresh bulbs of Allium sativum L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.; USP	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur. or HAB (and Ph.Eur. 1.1.5)	Archangelica comp.	
Allium ursinum L.	Fresh whole plants of Allium ursinum L. at the start of flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Aloe ferox Mill. and other Aloe species	Concentrated and dried juice of the leaves of various species of Aloe, mainly Aloe ferox Miller and its hybrids	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (Ethanol 70%), 4.1.1		
Althaea officinalis L.	Peeled or unpeeled, whole or cut, dried root of Althaea officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	aquous extract DER 1:8-12	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Amanita muscaria (L.) Lam.	Fresh fruiting bodies of Amanita muscaria (L.) Lam. Champignon (carpophore) entier, frais from Amanita muscaria (L. ex Fries) Hooker	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.11 (see monograph: ethanol 45%), HAB 33b	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Agaricus muscarius; Conchae comp.; Mygale comp.	
Amanita phalloides (Vaill. ex Fr.) Link	Whole, fresh mushroom (fruiting body) Amanita phalloides (Vaill. ex Fr.) Link)	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Ammi visnaga (L.) Lam.	Dried ripe fruits of Ammi visnaga (L.) Lam.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Ammi visnaga comp.	
Amygdalae amarae	see Prunus dulcis var. amara (DC.) Buchheim				
Anacardium	see Semecarpus anacardium L.				
Anagallis arvensis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., collected at flowering	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	
Anagallis arvensis L.	Dried aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., having been collected at flowering		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Anamirta cocculus Wight et Arn.	Dried, ripe fruits of Anamirta cocculus (L.) Wight et Arn.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (Ethanol 90%)	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.	
Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.	Freshly pressed juice of fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1	Resina Laricis comp.	
Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.	Fresh fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.		Maceration with ethanol 96% (Fruit: ethanol 96%: 4:1)	Ananassa comp. ; Resina Laricis comp.	
Angelica archangelica L.	Fresh roots and rhizomes of Angelica archangelica L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.11, HAB 33c	Archangelica ; Archangelica comp. ; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.	
Angelica archangelica L.	Whole or cut, carefully dried rhizome and root of Angelica archangelica L. (syn. A. officinalis Hoffm.)	Ph.Eur.	Ethanolic distillation together with other drugs	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Anhalonium	see Lophophora williamsii Coult.				
Anisum	see Pimpinella anisum L.				
Anthyllis vulneraria L.	Fresh aerial parts of Anthyllis vulneraria L. at flowering		HAB 12c	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp.	
Apocynum cannabinum L.	Fresh underground parts of Apocynum cannabinum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.9	Scilla comp.	
Aralia racemosa L.	Fresh underground parts of Aralia racemosa L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Arctium lappa L.	Dried whole or cut roots of Arctium lappa L. (A. major Gaertn.), A. minus (Hill) Bernh. and A. tomentosum Mill. also related species or hybrids (Asteraceae), collected in autumn of the first year or spring of the second year	DAC	HAB 12g	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp.	
Arctostaphylos uva-ursi (L.) Spreng.	Dried leaves of Arctostaphylos uva-ursi (L.) Spreng.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Uva ursi comp.	
Arisaema triphyllum (L.) Torr.	Fresh underground parts of Arisaemia triphyllum (L.) Torr., collected before the leaves develop.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Arnica montana L.	Volatile oil from the underground parts of Arnica montana L.		see App. 2.6 (Calcium silicicum comp.)		Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Arnica montana L.	Fresh flower-heads of Arnica montana L.		HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Arnica, Flos ; Calendula/Urtica comp.	
Arnica montana L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Arnica montana L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.4, 1.1.5, 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45% Ph.fr.), HAB 12a, 21, 33c. See also App. 2.7: Arnica montana 1:1,1	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Allium cepa/Tendo comp.; Apis/Arnica; Arnica comp.; Arnica, Planta tota; Arnica, Planta tota/Aurum; Arnica, Planta tota/Cor; Arnica, Planta tota/Equisetum arvense; Arnica, Planta tota/Formica; Arnica, Planta tota/Vespa Crabro; Arnica-Cerebrum; Arnica/Betula comp.; Arnica/Cactus comp.; Arnica/Echinacea comp.; Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Arnica/Formica comp.; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp.; Arnica/Levisticum comp.; Arnica/Plumbum mellitum; Arnica/Symphytum comp.; Arnica/Urtica urens; Articulatio talocruralis comp.; Aurum/Onopordon comp.; Betula/Arnica comp.; Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum; Cerebellum comp.; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Mandragora comp.; Medulla spinalis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Arnica; Stannum/Symphytum comp.; Symphytum comp.	
Arnica montana L.	Fresh underground parts of Arnica montana L.		HAB 21, 33c	Apis comp.; Arnica	
Arnica montana L.	Whole or partially broken, dried flower-heads of Arnica montana L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	HAB 12d (olive oil), 12g	Apis/Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica, Flos ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Lotio Pruni comp.; Oleum lactagogum	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Arnica montana L.	Dried underground parts of Arnica montana L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (Ethanol 90%); Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3/ APC 4.3	Arnica ; Cinis Arnicae comp.	
Artemisia abrotanum L.	Fresh young shoots and leaves of Artemisia abrotanum L. HAB Fresh, non-woody aerial part of Artemisia abrotanum L. Ph.fr.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (Ethanol 65 %) HAB 33c	Abrotanum; Bolus alba comp.	
Artemisia absinthium L.	Fresh upper shoots with attached leaves and flowers and basal leaves of Artemisia absinthium L. separately or as a mixture.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, Extraction with ethanol 36% (1:2,3)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Artemisia absinthium L.	Basal leaves or slightly leafy, flowering tops, or mixture of these dried, whole or cut organs of Artemisia absinthium L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%), 1.4.4, Extraction with water (together with other herbal drugs)	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp. ; Absinthium/Resina Laricis ; Artemisia comp. ; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Gentiana comp.; Gentiana/Zingiber comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Arum maculatum L.	Fresh underground parts of Arum maculatum L., collected before the leaves develop.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.4	Arum maculatum/Pteridium aquilinum	
Arum triphyllum	see Arisaema triphyllum (L.) Torr.				
Arundo donax L.	Fresh underground parts of Arundo donax L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65 %)		
Asa foetida	see Ferula assa-foetida L.				
Asarum europaeum L.	Fresh underground parts of phenylpropane-containing subspecies of Asarum europaeum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Asperula odorata	see Galium odoratum				
Aspidium filix-mas	see Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.				
Asplenium scolopendrium	see Phylitis scolopendrium				
Astragalus exscapus L.	Fresh flowering and in fruit rosettes of Astragalus exscapus L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		Vademecum: Astragalus exscapus
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh fruits of Atropa bella-donna L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.6, HAB 33a	Apis/Belladonna; Apis/Belladonna/ Mercurius; Belladonna; Belladonna / Rosae aetheroleum; Echinacea/ Mercurius comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Atropa belladonna L.	Whole, fresh, flowering plant of Atropa belladonna L., harvested at the end of flowering, with the ligneous base of the stems removed	(HAB); Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 21	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Apis/ Belladonna; Argentum comp.; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Belladonna; Belladonna/Betula/Formica ; Belladonna/Lens cristallina Columbae/ Resina Laricis; Belladonna/Oxalis ; Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Belladonna/Quarz ; Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Cactus/ Magnesium phosphoricum ; Chamomilla comp.; Drosera/ Ipecacuanha comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Oxalis comp.; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna; Zinnober comp.	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh aerial parts of Atropa bella-donna L. without woody lower stem sections, collected at the beginning of flowering		HAB 33a	Ammi visnaga comp.; Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Apis/Berberis comp.; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Belladonna; Belladonna /Rosae aetheroleum; Belladonna comp. ; Carum carvi comp.; Conjunctiva comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Lachesis comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Silicea comp.; Thyreoidea comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh underground parts of Atropa bella-donna L.		HAB 21, 33b	Aconitum comp.; Belladonna; Belladonna/Chamomilla; Bryonia/ Pulsatilla comp.; Viscum comp.	
Avena sativa L.	Whole fresh plants of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage	HAB	HAB 33c	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Avena comp. ; Avena/Passiflora comp.	
Avena sativa L.	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage		Aqueous extract (with sucrose) 1:5 (see mon. KC)	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.	
Avena sativa L.	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected at flowering time	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.1, 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45 %)	Avena sativa; Avena sativa comp.	
Avena sativa L.	Germinated fruits of Avena sativa L.		APC 4.3	Cor/Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	
Avena sativa L.	Dried milled fruits of Avena sativa L.		API	Avena/Conchae comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Balsamum peruvianum	see Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms				
Bambusa	see Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.				
Belladonna	see Atropa bella-donna L.				
Bellis perennis L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Bellis perennis L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Symphytum comp.	
Bellis perennis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Bellis perennis L. at flowering		HAB 12c	Bellis/Tropaeolum; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp.	
Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich	Resin obtained by incising the trunk of Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Ceratum benzoinatum	
Berberis aquifolium	see Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.				
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh aerial parts of Berberis vulgaris L. at flowering		HAB 33c	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/ Uterus comp.	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.		Ph.Eur. 1.4.3, HAB 33d	Apis/Berberis comp.; Berberis/ Hypericum comp. ; Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Berberis/ Sepia comp.; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Lycopodium comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Whole, fully ripened berries of Berberis vulgaris L. stripped off the fruit stalks	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.4, HAB 21, 33c	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Argentum/ Berberis comp.; Berberis e fructibus comp.; Berberis, Fructus; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Mercurialis perennis ; Berberis/ Nicotiana comp. ; Berberis/Prunus ; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Berberis/Quarz ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Echinacea comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Sambucus/Teucrium comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh whole plant including berries of Berberis vulgaris L.		HAB 21	Berberis, Planta tota/Urtica urens	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried bark of aerial and underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8, 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), 1.4.2	Apis comp.; Barium comp. ; Berberis, Cortex ; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried bark of underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.		HAB 12f	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/Juniperus comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Betonica	see Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev.				
Betula pendula Roth	Fresh young leaves of Betula pendula Roth.	HAB	1.1.7, HAB 22, 34e	Belladonna/Betula/Formica ; Betula, Folium; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Betula/ Juniperus ; Cartilago comp. ; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Mandragora comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Betula pendula Roth	Dried bark from white parts only of trunk and branches of Betula pendula Roth	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Arnica/Betula comp. ; Arnica/ Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Formica comp. ; Arnica/ Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Betula comp.; Betula, Cortex ; Betula/Mandragora comp.; Retina/ Secale comp.	
Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrh.	Whole or fragmented dried leaves of Betula pendula Roth and /or Betula pubescens Ehrh., as well as hybrids of both species.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), HAB 12g	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Betula, Folium; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Mandragora comp.; Medulla spinalis comp.; Oleum lactagogum	
Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrh.	Carbon obtained from wood of Betula pendula Roth or B. pubescens Ehrh.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 see app. 2.7	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Betulae; Carbo Betulae cum Methano ; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Carbo Betulae/ Crataegus ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur ; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Boldo	see Peumus boldus Mol.				
Borago officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Borago officinalis L.	(HAB 1924)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.4, HAB 34b	Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago; Borago comp.; Borago/Renes comp. ; Quercus comp.	
Borago officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Borago officinalis L. at flowering		HAB 12a, 12c	Borago	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Boswellia carteri Birdwood (Boswellia sacra Flueckiger) Bosswellia frereana Birdwood	Solidified gum-resin obtained from incisions in the shrubs or trees of members of the genus Boswellia, particularly Boswellia carteri Birdwood (Syn. Boswellia sacra Flueckiger) and/or Bosswellia frereana Birdwood		Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 4.1.1	Aurum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Olibanum comp./Succinum	
Brassica nigra (L.) W.D.J. Koch	Ripe dried seeds of Brassica nigra (L.) Koch	DAC	HAB 12f	Aesculus/Cera comp.	
Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin Bryonia alba L.	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin or Bryonia alba L., harvested before the plant comes into flower	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Aconitum/Arnica/Bryonia; Aconitum/Bryonia; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Bryonia ; Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin, harvested before shoots are produced	HAB	HAB 33b	Aconitum/China comp. ; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Bryonia ; Bryonia comp.; Bryonia/Pulsatilla comp.; Bryonia/Stannum ; Bryonia/Viscum comp.; Gelsemium comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Bryonia alba L. or Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh underground parts of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin or Bryonia alba L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (Ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger and Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 30 %), 33b	Bryophyllum ; Bryophyllum comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Ignatia comp.	
Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh pressed juice from leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	(HAB)	APC 5.2.1	Bryophyllum	
Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken, harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21, see also App. 2.7: Bryophyllum pinnata 1:1,1	Bryophyllum ; Bryophyllum/Conchae	
Buxus sempervirens L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of Buxus sempervirens L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Cactus grandiflorus	see Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose				
Cajeputi aetheroleum	see Melaleuca leucadendra (L.) L.				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Calamus	see Acorus calamus L.				
Calendula officinalis L.	Fresh flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.		HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula ; Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Echinacea/ Viscum comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Calendula officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.5; HAB 33c, expressing the juice	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Arnica/ Echinacea comp. ; Calendula ; Calendula comp. ; Calendula Presssaft/ Echinacea; Calendula/Echinacea purpurea ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Calendula/Stibium ; Majorana/ Thuja comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.; Symphytum comp.	
Calendula officinalis L.	Dried flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.		HAB 12f, 57	Calendula ; Euphrasia comp.; Oleum rhinale	
Calendula officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time		HAB 12 d, extraction with oil together with other starting materials (1.2:10)	Apis/Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./ Cuprum ; Arnica comp./Formica ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Oleum lactagogum	
Campanula rotundifolia L.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of Campanula rotundifolia L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Medik.	Dried aerial parts of Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Medik, collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)	Capsella bursa-pastoris ; Capsella/ Majorana comp. ; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Hydrastis comp.	
Capsicum annuum L.	Dried ripe fruits of Capsicum annuum L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Capsicum annuum ; Kastanien-Haartonikum	
Caramel	see Saccharum officinarum L.				
Carduus benedictus	see Cnicus benedictus L.				
Carduus marianus	see Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertn.				
Carex arenaria L.	Dried rhizome of Carex arenaria L., collected in spring		App. 2.7: Carex arenaria, ethanol. Decoctum 1:4		Soldner / Stellmann (2011), Individuelle Pädiatrie, p. 190-198

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Carum carvi L.	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the dry fruits of Carum carvi L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Melissa comp.; Oleum lactagogum; Tropaeolum comp.	
Carum carvi L.	Whole, dry mericarp of Carum carvi L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), aqueous extract 1.8:1, extract with ethanol 36%, API, APC 4.2	Artemisia comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Carum carvi; Carum carvi comp.; Centaurium comp.	
Caryophyllus	see Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry				
Cassia angustifolia Vahl., Cassia senna L.	Dried leaflets of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile), known as Alexandrian or Khartoum senna, or Cassia angustifolia Vahl., known as Tinnevelly senna, or a mixture of the 2 species.	Ph.Eur.	API	Centaurium comp.	
Cassia senna L. (Cassia acutifolia Delile)	Dried fruit of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile)	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Artemisia comp.	
Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx.	Fresh underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx., harvested in late summer	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx.	Dried underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michaux.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Ceanothus americanus L.	Dried leaves of Ceanothus americanus L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Fresh aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn.		Ph. Eur. 1.1.4, ethanolic extract 1:2.3 (ethanol 36%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn s. l. including C. majus (H. et L.) Zeltner and C. suffruticosum (Griseb.) Ronn. (syn.: Erythraea centaurium Persoon; C. umbellatum Gilibert; C. minus Gars.)	Ph.Eur.	API	Centaurium comp.	
Centella asiatica (L.) Urban	Dried, whole plant of Centella asiatica (L.) Urban (Hydrocotyle asiatica L.)	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Cepa	see Allium cepa L.				
Cephaelis ipecacuanha	see Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Carapichea ipecacuanha (Brot.) L. Andersson (Cephaelis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich, Cephaelis acuminata H. Karst.)	Fragmented and dried underground organs of Carapichea ipecacuanha (Brot.) L. Andersson (syn. Cephaëlis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich.; Cephaëlis acuminata H. Karst.) from Mato Grosso or Costa Rica.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Cetraria islandica (L.) Acharius s.l.	Whole or cut, dried thallus of Cetraria islandica (L.) Acharius s.l.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), aqueous extract	Cetraria islandica; Lichenes comp.; Verbascum comp.	
Chamomilla recutita	see Matricaria recutita L.				
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21, 34b	Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Berberis/ Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium; Chelidonium comp.; Chelidonium/ Colocynthis ; Chelidonium/Curcuma; Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Colchicum comp.	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh flowers of Chelidonium majus L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.3	Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium; Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Colchicum/Chelidonium; Colchicum/ Spongia comp.	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Chelidonium majus L., collected at flowering time		HAB 34b	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium; Chelidonium/ Colocynthis ; Chelidonium/ Terebinthina laricina comp.	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of Chelidonium majus L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Chimaphila umbellata (L.) Barton	Dried aerial parts of Chimaphila umbellata (L.) Barton	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
China	see Cinchona pubescens Vahl				
Chlorophyceae (class), Cladophora or Oedogonium (genera)	Fresh thalli of algae from the genus Cladophora or Oedogonium or other genera of filamentous organised green algae from the class Chlorophyceae.		HAB 33e	Argentum nitricum comp.	
Chrysosplenium alternifolium L.	Whole fresh plants of Chrysosplenium alternifolium L.		HAB 33b	Chrysosplenium comp.	
Cichorium intybus L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21, 33c; extract with ethanol (36 %) 1:2.3	Anagallis comp.; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chrysosplenium comp.; Cichorium; Cichorium Plumbo cultum; Cichorium Stanno cultum; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Lien comp.; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Cichorium intybus L. var. intybus & Cichorium intybus L. var. sativum DC	Dried whole plants of Cichorium intybus L. var. intybus and Cichorium intybus L. var. sativum DC, collected at flowering time. The tough middle stem sections are not used.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), APC 4.2, 4.3	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Basilicum comp.; Cichorium; Cichorium comp.	
Cimicifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Cimifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.9, HAB 33c	Cimicifuga comp. ; Cimicifuga racemosa	
Cinchona pubescens Vahl	Whole or cut, dried bark of Cinchona pubescens Vahl (Cinchona succirubra Pav.), of Cinchona calisaya Wedd., of Cinchona ledgeriana Moens ex Trimen or of their varieties or hybrids.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Aconitum/China comp. ; Drosera/ Ipecacuanha comp.	
Cineraria maritima	see Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod.				
Cinnamomum verum J. S. Presl	Dried bark, freed from the outer cork and the underlying parenchyma, of the shoots grown on cut stock of Cinnamomum verum J. S. Presl.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%); distillation	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.	Fresh aerial roots of Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7	Cissus-Ossa	
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Dried pulp of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds	Ph.fr.	Ph..Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Fresh peeled unripe fruit of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds		HAB 33a	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Chelidonium/Colocynthis ; Colocynthis	
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Dried peeled fruit of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)	Colocynthis	
Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Essential oil obtained by suitable mechanical means, without the aid of heat, from the fresh peel of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Ph.Eur.	API	Citri aetheroleum; Silicea colloidalis comp.; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Fresh pressed juice from the fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.		API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Citrus/ Cydonia; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Lotio Pruni comp.	
Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Fresh fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.		HAB 33c, API, see also App. 2.7: Citrus limon, Fruct. rec. 1:0.41	Citrus/Cydonia	
Citrus medica var. limonum	see Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.				
Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl. (Cladonia rangiferina (L.) Web.)	Dried thallus of Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); extraction with water (together with other ingredients)	Lichenes comp.	
Cladonia rangiferina	see Cladina rangiferina				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Claviceps purpurea (Fr.) Tul.	Dried sclerotum of Claviceps purpurea (Fries) Tulasne, grown on rye plants (Secale cereale L.) and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (Ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Argentum/Secale ; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Hydrastis comp.; Quarz/Secale; Retina/Secale comp.	
Clematis recta L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Clematis recta L.	Fresh aerial parts of of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		Vademecum: Clematis recta
Cnicus benedictus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Cnicus benedictus L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.2.11, HAB 33d	Borago comp.; Carduus benedictus/ Paeonia officinalis	
Cocculus	see Anamirta cocculus Wight et Arn.				
Cochlearia armoracia	see Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.				
Cochlearia officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the start of flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 21, 33b	Basilicum comp.; Cochlearia officinalis; Tormentilla comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Cochlearia officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the beginning of the flowering time		API	Cochlearia officinalis; Levisticum comp.	
Coffea arabica L.	Dried, roasted seeds of Coffea arabica L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 18%)	Avena sativa comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Zincum valerianicum comp.	
Coffea arabica L.	Ripe, dried, unroasted seeds of Coffea arabica L. with the seed coat (silver skin) largely removed	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), Ph.Helv.17.7.4.2/ APC 4.2		
Colchicum autumnale L.	Fresh corms of Colchicum autumnale L., collected at flowering time and free from fibrous roots	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.2.4, HAB 21	Apis comp.; Colchicum; Colchicum comp.; Colchicum/Sabina; Colchicum/ Spongia comp.	
Colchicum autumnale L.	Fresh whole, flowering plant of Colchicum autumnale L.		HAB 34c	Colchicum; Colchicum/Chelidonium	
Colocynthis	see Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.				
Commiphora molmol Engler and/or other species	Gum-resin, hardened in air, obtained by incision or produced by spontaneous exudation from the stem and branches of Commiphora molmol Engler and/or other species of Commiphora.	Ph.Eur.	Myrrhae tinctura Ph.Eur.	Aurum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Salvia comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica	
Conium maculatum L.	Fresh flowerheads of Conium maculatum L., collected at the end of flowering time	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Conium maculatum L.	Fresh, aerial parts of the flowering, but not yet fruiting specimens of Conium maculatum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Conium maculatum	
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Convallaria majalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.3	Convallaria; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria; Scilla comp.	
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh whole, flowering plants of Convallaria majalis L.		HAB 33c	Adonis/Scilla comp.; Convallaria/ Primula comp.	
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh flowers with pedicels of Convallaria majalis L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7 with extension: during the prescribed maceration time the mixture is exposed for 3 days to sunlight filtered through a saturated solution of alum.	Convallaria	
Coriandrum sativum L.	Dried cremocarp of Coriandrium sativum L.	Ph.Eur.	Distillation (together with other ingredients)	Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Fresh leaves and ripe fruit of Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC. and Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindman		HAB 33d	Adonis comp.; Adonis/Scilla comp.; Arnica/Cactus comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Cor/ Crataegus comp.; Crataegus; Crataegus/ Viscum ; Passiflora comp.	
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Fresh ripe fruits of Crataegus laevigata (Poir) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm., their hybrids and mixtures thereof	HAB	See Monograph HAB (Ph.Eur. 1.1.3), Ph.Eur. 1.2.4, 1.2.5; aqueous extract with sucrose and citric acid (3:4.95:2:0.05)	Aurum/Crataegus; Cactus/Crataegus ; Cactus/Crataegus comp.; Cactus/ Magnesium phosphoricum ; Carbo Betulae/Crataegus ; Crataegus; Crataegus comp. ; Crataegus/Ferrum sidereum/Saccharum tostum; Crataegus/Kalmia; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./Oleander/ Convallaria	
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Dried leaves of Crataegus monogyna Jacq. (Lindm.), C. laevigata (Poir.) DC. (syn. C. oxyacanthoides Thuill.; C. oxyacantha auct.) or their hybrids or, more rarely, other European Crataegus species including C. pentagyna Waldst. et Kit. ex Willd., C. nigra Waldst. et Kit. and C. azarolus L		Extraction with ethanol 36% (DER 1:1.5-2.5)	Crataegus	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm. and other	Whole or cut, dried flower-bearing branches of Crataegus monogyna Jacq. (Lindm.), C. laevigata (Poir.) DC. (syn. C.oxyacanthoides Thuill.; C. oxyacantha auct.) or their hybrids or, more rarely, other European Crataegus species including C. pentagyna Waldst. et Kit. ex Willd., C. nigra Waldst. et Kit. and C. azarolus L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13	Crataegus	
Crocus sativus L.	Dried stigmas of Crocus sativa L., usually joined by the base to a short style.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90% acc. to HAB), 1.1.10 (ethanol 80%); ethanolic extract 1:20 (see App. 2.6: Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Cucurbita pepo L.	Fresh flowers of Cucurbita pepo L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, 4.2.1	Apatit/Conchae; Apatit/Phosphorus comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.	
Cucurbita maxima Duch.	Dried pulp of pumpkins of Cucurbita maxima Duch.		API		Vademecum: Chelidonium/ Curcuma comp.
Curcuma zanthorrhiza Roxb. (syn. C. zanthorrhiza D. Dietrich).	Dried rhizome, cut in slices, of Cucurma zanthorrhiza Roxb. (syn. C. zanthorrhiza D. Dietrich).	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), also API	Chelidonium/Curcuma	
Cydonia oblonga Mill.	Fresh ripe fruits of Cydonia oblonga Mill.	APC	extract according to monographs APC, HAB 33b	Citrus/Cydonia; Cydonia, Fructus; Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh or partially dried aerial parts of Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt.	Ph.Eur.	HAB 12h	Citronellae aetheroleum; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Cynara scolymus L.	Fresh leaves of Cynara scolymus L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link. with flowers and leaves	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.	Fresh aerial parts of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link at flowering time		HAB 33c	Sarothamnus comp.; Scilla comp.	
Daphne mezereum L.	Fresh bark from the branches of Daphne mezereum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Mezereum	
Datura stramonium L.	Fresh aerial parts of Datura stramonium L., collected at flowering time	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (see monograph: ethanol 45%), HAB 21	Mygale comp.; Stramonium	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Delphinium staphisagria L.	Dried ripe seeds of Delphinium staphisagria L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Digitalis purpurea L.	Fresh leaves from two-year-old specimens of Digitalis purpurea L., collected before flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.2.4	Digitalis purpurea	
Dolichos pruriens	see Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC.				
Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne, Drosera anglica Huds	Whole dried plants of different Drosera species, mainly Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera anglica Huds. (D. longifolia L.), Drosera madagascariensis DC, Drosera peltata Sm, Drosera ramentacea Burch. ex harv. et Sond., single species or mixed	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne, Drosera anglica Huds.	Whole fresh plants of Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne and Drosera anglica Huds., single species or mixed, collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 33c	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Plantago comp.; Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Fresh rhizome of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott, with roots		HAB 33c	Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Fresh aerial parts of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.		APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.	
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Ripe spores of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus	
Dulcamara	see Solanum dulcamara L.				
Echinacea angustifolia DC. (Rudbeckia angustifolia L.)	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), HAB 21, 33c	Argentum/Echinacea; Argentum/ Quercus comp. ; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Chamomilla comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea comp.	
Echinacea angustifolia DC., Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC. and Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., single species or mixed	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Argentum/Echinacea; Calendula Presssaft/Echinacea; Euphrasia comp.	
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh flowering plants of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	HAB	HAB 33c	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Cartilago/ Echinacea comp. ; Conjunctiva comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Rosae aetheroleum; Echinacea/Viscum; Endometrium comp.; Majorana/Thuja comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh aerial parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., collected at flowering time		HAB 12c	Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea; Echinacea/Viscum comp.	
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh underground parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.		HAB 33d	Argentum/Echinacea; Echinacea/ Mercurius comp.	
Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.6	Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Calendula/ Echinacea purpurea ; Chamomilla comp.; Echinacea; Echinacea/Prunus comp.	
Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	Fresh flowers of Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Echinacea	
Elymus repens (L.) Gould	Fresh underground parts of Elymus repens (L.) Gould	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Agropyron comp.	
Equisetum arvense L.	Fresh, green, sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L.	HAB	HAB 12c, 21 (see monograph), 35b, see app. 2.7	Arnica, Planta tota/Equisetum arvense ; Aurum/Equisetum ; Cantharis comp. ; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum arvense; Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum; Equisetum arvense/Formica; Equisetum/Stannum ; Mandragora comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Equisetum arvense L.	Whole or cut, dried sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12, HAB 12d, 12g, extraction with glycerol, APC 4.2, 4.3	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Carbo Equiseti arvensis; Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit ; Equisetum arvense; Equisetum arvense/ Formica; Equisetum arvense/Tabacum; Equisetum comp.; Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum; Equisetum/Pancreas; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Equisetum/ Stannum ; Equisetum/Viscum; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lien comp.; Mandragora comp.; Solum uliginosum comp.	
Equisetum fluviatile	see Equisetum limosum				
Equisetum limosum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Equisetum limosum L.		Starting material for the preparation of Equisetum limosum-Rubellit (app. 2.6)		Soldner/ Stellmann (2011) Individuelle Pädiatrie
Erythraea centaurium	see Centaurium erythraea Rafn.				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Eschscholzia californica Cham.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Eschscholzia californica Cham.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation and rectification from the fresh leaves or the fresh terminal branchlets of various species of Eucalyptus rich in 1,8-cineole. The species mainly used are Eucalyptus globulus Labill., Eucalyptus polybractea R.T.Baker and Eucalyptus smithii R.T.Baker.	Ph.Eur.	API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Eucalypti aetheroleum; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Mercurius vivus/ Eucaplyti aetheroleum; Oleum camphoratum comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Fresh leaves of Eucalyptus globulus Labill.		HAB 33d	Aconitum/China comp. ; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Cuprum sulfuricum/Eucalyptus	
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Whole or cut, dried leaves of older branches of Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)	Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/ Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Eugenia caryophyllata	see Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry				
Eupatorium cannabinum L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Eupatorium cannabinum L.		HAB 33c	Aconitum/China comp. ; Bronchi/ Plantago comp.	
Eupatorium perfoliatum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Eupatorium perfoliatum L., collected at start of flowering	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Euphrasia stricta D. Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and/or Euphrasia rostkoviana Hayne	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Euphrasia stricta D. Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and/or Euphrasia rostkoviana Hayne and/or their hybrids and/or their mixtures	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (Ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Euphrasia stricta Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and Euphrasia officinalis L. subsp. rostkoviana (Hayne) Towns	Whole fresh plants of Euphrasia stricta Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and Euphrasia officinalis L. subsp. rostkoviana (Hayne) Towns, their hybrids and mixtures thereof, collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.7 (HAB 3c), 33c	Euphrasia; Euphrasia comp.; Euphrasia/ Rosae aetheroleum	
Fagus sylvatica L.	Branch and trunk wood of Fagus silvatica L.		Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3 (APC 4.3); raw material for the preparation of Kalium carbonicum e Fagi (app. 2.4)	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Fagus sylvatica	Wood of Fagus sylvatica		Raw material for the preparation of Kalium carbonicum e cinere Fagi (app. 2.4)		
Ferula assa-foetida L.	Dried gum resin from Ferula species such as Ferula assa-foetida L. and Ferula foetida (Bunge) Regel. (Asa foetida)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim.	Fresh aerial parts of Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim. collected at floweing time.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 34c	Betula/Mandragora comp.	
Filix-mas	see Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.				
Foeniculum vulgare Mill.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe fruits of Foeniculum vulgare Miller ssp. vulgare var. vulgare.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Melissa comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Foeniculum vulgare	Dried cremocarps and mericarps of Foeniculum vulgare Mill. sp. vulgare var. vulgare	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), API	Species Carvi comp.	
Fragaria vesca L.	Fresh, ripe false-fruits of Fragaria vesca L		HAB 21, extract with ethanol (66% m/m) and sucrose 3:2 (DER 1:0.9)	Aqua Maris comp.; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Fragaria/Urtica/ Gentiana; Levisticum comp.	
Fragaria vesca L.	Dried, whole or cut leaves, collected at flowering time of Fragaria vesca L., Fragaria moschata West., Fragaria viridis West., Fragaria x ananassa (Duch.) Guedes (Rosaceae), their hybrids as well as hybrids with other Fragaria species or mixtures of them	DAC	API	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Fragaria/Vitis; Vitis comp.	
Frangula alnus	see Rhamnus frangula L.				
Fucus vesiculosus L.	Fresh thallus of Fucus vesiculosus L.		HAB 51	Tropaeolum comp.	
Fumaria officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Fumaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	HAB 1.1.3, 33c	Tropaeolum comp.	Vademecum (combination see Hippocampus)
Galanthus nivalis L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Galanthus nivalis L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.6		Vademecum (see Hippocampus)
Quercus infectoria Olivier	Oak apples produced on young shoots of Quercus infectoria Olivier by the sting of the dyers gall wasp Andricus gallae tinctoriae Olivier	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	Fresh underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.9, HAB 35b	Apis comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Gelsemium; Oxalis comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	Dried underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.		Ph.Eur. 2.1.12 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Gelsemium; Gelsemium comp.; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Genista scoparia	see Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.				
Gentiana lutea L.	Fresh underground parts of Gentiana lutea L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), 1.2.10, HAB 21, 33c	Achillea comp.; Bolus alba comp.; Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Gentiana lutea ; Nux vomica comp.	
Gentiana lutea L.	Dried, fragmented underground organs of Gentiana lutea L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.4.3, aqueous extract, APC 4.2	Aqua Maris comp.; Fragaria/Urtica/ Gentiana; Gentiana comp.; Gentiana/ Zingiber comp.	
Geraniaceae	see Pelargonium species				
Geum urbanum L.	Fresh underground parts of Geum urbanum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.11, HAB 21, 33c	Artemisia comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Geum urbanum	
Ginkgo biloba L.	Fresh leaves of Ginkgo biloba L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (Ethanol 65%)		
Ginseng	see Panax ginseng C.A. Mey.				
Glechoma hederacea L.	Dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.		Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3 (APC 4.3)	Cinis Glechomatis	
Gnaphalium	see Leontopodium alpinum Cass.				
Gossypium L. , G. hirsutum L.	Dried seeds, devoid of fibres, of Gossypium herbaceum L. or G. hirsutum L.		Maceration 1:3 with ethanol 73% m/m (80% V/V)		ABMA-Vademecum
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.		HAB 12c (bark:leaves 1:9)	Hamamelis	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh bark from roots and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33e	Hamamelis	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 33d	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Borago comp.; Hamamelis; Quercus comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh flowering branches of Hamamelis virginiana L., collected in late autumn	HAB 34	HAB 52	Hamamelis comp.; Hamamelis destillata	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Achillea comp.; Hamamelis; Hydrastis comp.; Symphytum comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Whole or cut, dried leaf of Hamamelis virginiana L.	Ph.Eur.	Extract with ethanol 36 % (DER 1:1)	Aesculus, Cortex/ Borago/Hamamelis, Folium; Calendula comp. ; Stibium comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh bark from branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.		HAB 33e	Hirudo comp.	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Dried leaves and dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.		Distillate with ethanol 12 % (1 part ethanol 96 %, 8.7 parts water)(DER 1:15)	Lotio Pruni comp.	
Harpagophytum procumbens (Burch.) DC	Cut and dried, tuberous secondary roots of Harpagophytum procumbens DC. and/or Harpagophytum zeyheri Decne.	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 35b	Harpagophytum, Radix	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Helianthus tuberosus L.	Fresh tubers of Helianthus tuberosus L., collected in late autumn	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		
Helleborus foetidus L.	Whole fresh plant collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of Helleborus foetidus L.		Ph.Eur. 1.3.1, see also app. 2.6 (Helleborus foetidus)		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 565
Helleborus niger L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of Helleborus niger L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21, 34c; fermentated, aqueous extract	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Helleborus niger	
Helleborus niger L.	Fresh whole plants of Helleborus niger L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Helleborus niger	
Helleborus niger L.	Whole fresh plant collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of Helleborus niger L.		Ph.Eur. 1.3.1; see also app. 2.6 (Helleborus niger)		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 500-566
Helonias dioica	see Chamaelirium luteum (L.) A. Gray				
Hippophaë rhamnoides L.	Fresh fruits of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.		pressing to obtain the juice (=API)		
Hippophaë rhamnoides L.	Fatty oil obtained from the seeds and/or fruit of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.		API		
Hordeum vulgare L.	Extract obtained from dried germinated fruits of Hordeum vulgare L. (malt)		conventional method for making malt	Avena/Conchae comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Humulus lupulus L.	Fresh bines with leaves and hop cones of Humulus lupulus L.	HAB	HAB 34d; extract with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Avena/Passiflora comp.; Hypericum/ Passiflora comp.	
Humulus lupulus L	Fresh, ripe female inflorescences of Humulus lupulus L., collected before the seeds have ripened and containing as few seeds as possible	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Avena sativa comp.	
Hydrastis canadensis L.	Whole or cut, dried rhizome and root of Hydrastis canadensis L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65% for 3-5 weeks)	Calendula comp. ; Echinacea comp.; Hydrastis canadensis; Hydrastis comp.; Lilium tigrinum comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Hydrocotyle asiatica	see Centella asiatica (L.) Urb.				
Hyoscyamus niger L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Hyoscyamus niger L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21, 33d	Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Aurum/ Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Hyoscyamus; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./Plumbum ; Onopordum/ Primula comp.; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo ; Primula comp.	
Hyoscyamus niger L.	Whole, fresh flowering plants of Hyoscyamus niger L.	Ph.Eur.	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur. or HAB: Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Argentum/Hyoscyamus ; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Aurum/ Hyoscyamus comp. ; Hyoscyamus; Hyoscyamus/Valeriana	
Hypericum perforatum L.	Fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum L.		see App. 2.7: Hypericum perforatum; Flos; Extr. oleos 1:2	Hypericum; Millefolium / Hypericum	
Hypericum perforatum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Berberis/ Hypericum comp. ; Camphora/ Hypericum ; Hypericum; Hypericum comp.; Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Levico comp.; Malva comp.; Primula comp.	
Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl.	Dried thallus of Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl. (Parmelia physodes (L.) Ach.)		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		Der Merkurstab 2010(63(1): 4-21 Vademecum; Lac Taraxaci D10/Pamelia D10
Ignatia	see Strychnos ignatii Bergius				
Illicium verum Hook.f.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dry ripe fruits of Illicium verum Hook.f.	Ph.Eur.	API	Lichenes comp.	
Imperatoria ostruthium	see Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W. D. J. Koch				
Ipecacuanha	see Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Ipecacuanha	see Cephaelis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich., Cephaelis acuminata Karsten				
Iris germanica L.	Fresh rhizome of Iris germanica L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.11, HAB 21		
Iris germanica L., Iris germanica var. florentina L. and Iris pallida Lamarck	Dried peeled rhizome of Iris germanica L., Iris germanica var. florentina L. and Iris pallida Lamarck		HAB 12q (ethanol 25%)	Lotio Pruni comp.	
Iris versicolor L.	Fresh underground parts (rhizome including roots) of Iris versicolor L. collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Iris versicolor L.	Fresh underground parts of Iris versicolor L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Juglans regia L.	Dried outer membrane from the seed of Juglans regia L.		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Carpellum Mali comp.	
Juglans regia L.	Fresh leaves and unripe fruit of Juglans regia L.		HAB 33c	Juglans regia comp.	
Juglans regia L.	Dried leaves of Juglans regia L.	DAC	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)		
Juniperus communis L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe, non-fermented berry cones of Juniperus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Juniperus destillata; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Juniperus communis L.	Fresh ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 35a	Tropaeolum comp.	
Juniperus communis L.	Dried tips of shoots of Juniperus communis L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Juniperus communis L.	Dried ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8; Extraction with water and sucrose	Betula/Juniperus ; Olibanum comp./ Succinum	
Juniperus sabina L.	Fresh, still unlignified, growing tips of twigs of Juniperus sabina L., with adherent leaves	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Colchicum/Sabina; Primula Auro culta comp.; Sabina	
Kalanchoe daigremontiana	see Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger				
Kalanchoe pinnata	see Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken				
Kalmia latifolia L.	Fresh leaves of Kalmia latifolia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Crataegus/Kalmia	
Krameria triandra Ruiz et Pav.	Dried, usually fragmented, underground organs of Krameria triandra Ruiz et Pav., known as Peruvian rhatany.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%); extract with ethanol 50% (DER 1:1)	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salvia comp.	
Lamium album L.	Fresh leaves, flowers and young tips shoots of Lamium album L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Argentum/Quercus comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Lamium album L.	Dried flowers of Lamium album L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%)		
Lappa major	see Arctium lappa L.				
Larix decidua Mill.	Balsam obtained from holes drilled in the trunks of Larix decidua Mill.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 96%), 3.2.1, 4.1.1, (Ph.Eur. 1.1.8, ethanol 50%), API	Absinthium/Resina Laricis ; Ananassa comp. ; Apis/Berberis comp.; Arnica/ Symphytum comp. ; Belladonna/Lens cristallina Columbae/ Resina Laricis; Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Berberis/ Sabal comp. ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Chrysolith comp.; Echinacea/ Viscum comp.; Flores Sambuci comp./ Quarz; Galenit/Retina comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Plantago comp.; Quarz/Resina Laricis; Resina Laricis; Resina Laricis comp.; Resina Laricis/ Oleum Terebinthinae; Resina Laricis/ Retina; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Retina comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Sambucus comp.; Uva ursi comp.	
Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (Lavandula officinalis Chaix)	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering tops of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (Lavandula officinalis Chaix)	Ph.Eur.	HAB 12h, API	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./ Formica ; Aurum/Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa ; Ceratum benzoinatum; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Lavendelöl; Oleum lactagogum; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis comp.; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solum uliginosum comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (L. officinalis Chaix)	Dried flower of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (L. officinalis Chaix).	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Aesculus/Lavandula siccata ; Lavandula siccata	
Ledum palustre L.	Dried tips of twigs of Ledum palustre L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)	Primula Auro culta comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Ledum palustre L.	Fresh, leafy twig of Ledum palustre L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Leontopodium nivale subsp. alpinum (Cass) Greuter)	Whole fresh plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (Ethanol 65%), App. 2.7	Apis comp.	
Leontopodium alpinum Cass. (L. nivale subsp. alpinum (Cass) Greuter)	Whole dried flowering plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass.		HAB 36	Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Leonurus cardiaca L.	Fresh aerial parts of Leonurus cardiaca L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.6, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%),	Cimicifuga comp.	
Levisticum officinale W.D.J. Koch	Whole or cut, dried rhizome and root of Levisticum officinale Koch.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), HAB 12d, 12g; see also App. 2.7.: Mucilago Levistici D1	Apis cum Levistico; Levisticum; Levisticum comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Fresh underground parts of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	HAB	HAB 21, 33c	Apis/Larynx comp.; Apis/Levisticum; Arnica/Levisticum comp. ; Avena/ Conchae comp.; Cerebellum comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Larynx comp.; Levisticum	
Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Fresh plants of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., without bulbs, collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Fresh aerial parts of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., collected at flowering time and including bulbils		HAB 33c	Lilium tigrinum comp.; Majorana/ Thuja comp.	
Lilium tigrinum	see Lilium lancifolium Thunb.				
Linum usitatissimum L.	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from ripe seeds of Linum usitatissimum L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp.	
Litsea cubeba Pers.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fruit of Litsea cubeba Pers.		Excipient		
Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm./ Sticta pulmonaria Ach.	Dried thallus of Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Lichenes comp.	
Lobelia inflata L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lobelia inflata L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Lobelia comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Lobelia inflata L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Lobelia inflata L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Lobelia comp.; Lobelia inflata	
Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw., collected at flowering time.	HAB 34	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3 and 4.2.1		Der Merkurstab 1999 Hepatitis, 4/2002: p. 271-7

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Lycopodium clavatum L.	Whole spore-bearing plant of Lycopodium clavatum L.		HAB 33e	Lycopodium; Lycopodium comp.	
Lycopodium clavatum L.	Dried ripe spores of Lycopodium clavatum L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)	Lycopodium	
Lycopus virginicus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Lycopus virginicus L.	Whole fresh plant of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time.		HAB 33d		Der Merkurstab 5/2004: p. 359
Lysimachia nummularia L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lysimachia nummularia L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.11; Decoction with water:ethanol 96% (12:9.5) (DER 1:2.15)	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	
Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.	Dried bark from branches and twigs and dried tips of twigs of Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Majorana	see Origanum majorana L.				
Maltum	see Hordeum vulgare L.				
Malus domestica Borkh.	Core from fresh fruit of Malus domestica Borkh. without kernel		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Carpellum Mali comp.	
Malus domestica Borkh.	sour apples of Malus domestica Borkh.		see Ferrum pomatum (App. 2.6)		Merkurstab 67(2014) (4)270-282
Malva sylvestris L.	Whole or fragmented dried flower of Malva sylvestris L. or its cultivated varieties.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 50%), HAB 12g	Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis; Phosphorus/Malva	
Malva sylvestris L., Malva neglecta Wallr.	Dried leaves of Malva sylvestris L., Malva neglecta Wallr. or a mixture of both species	Ph.Eur.	Extraction together with leaves acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (Ethanol 50%)	Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis	
Mandragora autumnalis	see Mandragora officinarum	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 or 1.2.12		
Mandragora officinarum L.	Fresh root of Mandragora officinarum L.		HAB 34d	Betula/Mandragora comp.; Cartilago/ Mandragora comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Mandragora; Rhus toxicodendron comp.	
Mandragora officinarum L. Mandragora autumnalis Bertol.	Dried roots of Mandragora officinarum L. and Mandragora autumnalis Bertol.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%) or 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Arnica/Betula comp.; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Betula comp.; Mandragora; Mandragora comp.; Mandragora/Meniscus Genus	
Maracuja doce	see Passiflora alata Curtis				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Marrubium vulgare L.	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of Marrubium vulgare L.	Ph.Eur.	aqueous extract together with other drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Marum verum	see Teucrium marum L.				
Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)	Fresh flower heads of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)		Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Anagallis/Malachit comp.	
Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert	Whole fresh flowering plants of Matricaria recutita L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 21, 33c	Bolus alba comp.; Chamomilla; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna	
Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)	Fresh underground parts of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert) before flowering time		Ph.Eur. 1.2.11, 1.4.2, HAB 21, 33c	Ammi visnaga comp.; Belladonna comp. ; Belladonna/Chamomilla; Carum carvi comp.; Chamomilla, Radix; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Nicotiana; Chrysosplenium comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Veratrum comp.	
Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert).	Dried capitula of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert).	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 50%), HAB 12f	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Birkenkohle comp.; Oleum rhinale	
Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)	Dried root of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Birkenkohle comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Chamomilla, Radix; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Oxalis comp.	
Melaleuca cajuputi Powell, Melaleuca leucadendra (L.) L.	Rectified essential oil obtained from fresh leaves and branches of Melaleuca cajuputi Powell or Melaleuca leucadendra (L.) L.		API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica	
Melissa indicum	see Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt and other Cymbopogon sp.				
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh leaves and young tips of Melissa officinalis L.	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21, steam distillation	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Melissa Cupro culta; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., before flowering time	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.		HAB 33c	Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Melissa/Sepia comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Melissa officinalis L.	Dried leaf of Melissa officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Extracts with ethanol (DER 1:1), together with Majorana with Oleum Cacao (DER 1:1:10), steam distillation	Cera et Mel comp.; Majorana/Melissa; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Melissa officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.		HAB 12g	Melissa comp.	
Mentha piperita L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh aerial parts of the flowering plant of Mentha x piperita L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Oleum rhinale; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Mentha piperita L.	Whole or cut dried leaves of Mentha x piperita L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Centaurium comp.; Majorana/Mentha/ Ruta	
Mentha piperita L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mentha x piperita L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Mercurialis perennis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Mercurialis perennis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	HAB 34c	Allium cepa/ Mercurialis comp.; Lachesis comp.; Mercurialis / Rosae aetheroleum; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.	
Mercurialis perennis L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Berberis/Mercurialis perennis ; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis perennis; Mercurialis/Mel	
Mercurialis perennis L.	Whole dried flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.		Extraction with vegetable oil	Calendula/Mercurialis comp.	
Mezereum	see Daphne mezereum L.				
Millefolium	see Achillea millefolium L.				
Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC	Dried hairs from the fruits of Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Myristica fragrans Houtt.	Dried seed kernel of Myristica fragrans Houtt.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr. (2016)
Myristica fragrans Houtt.	Dried, usually lime-treated seeds of Myristica fragrans Houtt., with aril and testa removed	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%); ethanolic distillate (together with other drugs)	Nux vomica comp.; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Myristica sebifera	see Virola sebifera Aubl.				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms var. pereirae (Royle) Harms.	Balsam obtained from the scorched and wounded trunk of Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms var. pereirae (Royle) Harms.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Calendula/ Mercurialis comp. ; Mercurialis comp.	
Myrrha	see Commiphora Jacq. species				
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Whole fresh plant of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (Ethanol 45%)		
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21, (Ph.Eur. 1.1.3)	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum	
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Dried aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.		API	Mercurius vivus comp.	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	HAB 21, 33b	Ammi visnaga comp.; Belladonna comp. ; Berberis/Nicotiana comp. ; Bleiglanz/Secale comp.; Borago comp.; Carum carvi comp.; Chamomilla/ Nicotiana; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum/ Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Nicotiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Nicotiana/Quarz ; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Oxalis/ Quarz comp.; Retina/Secale comp.; Robinia comp. ; Tabacum; Tabacum Cupro cultum	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Dried fermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 18%)	Tabacum	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Dried unfermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), HAB 12d, 12f, APC 4.2, 4.3	Aconitum/Nicotiana comp.; Carbones/ Pankreas/Witherit ; Chamomilla/ Malachit comp.; Cuprum/Nicotiana; Equisetum arvense/Tabacum; Equisetum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum/Tabacum; Rosmarini aetheroleum/Tabacum ; Tabacum	
Nux moschata	see Myristica fragrans Houtt.				
Nux vomica	see Strychnos nux-vomica L.				
Ocimum basilicum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Ocimum basilicum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Basilicum comp.	
Olibanum	see Boswellia species				

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Ononis spinosa	Whole or cut, dried root of Ononis spinosa L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)		
Onopordum acanthium L.	Fresh leaves of Onopordum acanthium L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Chelidonium comp.	
Onopordum acanthium L.	Fresh flowerhead of Onopordum acanthium L.		HAB 33c; see App. 2.6: Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1 % Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø, also extracts with Ethanol 24,5% or WFI	Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./Plumbum ; Onopordum/ Primula comp.	
Orchis L. or Ophrydeae tribe (Orchidaceae)	Filial tubers of different species of the genus Orchis L. (Orchidaceae) or other suitable intra- and intergeneric Orchis-Hybrids of the tribe Ophrydeae, which have been blanched in boiling water and dried		Ph.Eur. 1.4.3	Cerebellum comp.	
Origanum majorana L.	Fresh aerial parts of Origanum majorana L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 21, 33c	Majorana; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Origanum majorana L.	Dried aerial parts of Origanum majorana L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), HAB 12g, extraction with Ethanol (DER 1:1); together with Melissa with Oleum Cacao (DER 1:1:10)	Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Majorana; Majorana/Melissa; Majorana/Mentha/ Ruta; Melissa comp.	
Origanum majorana L.	Ripe fruit of Origanum majorana L.		Ethanolic decoction (DER 1:3), percolation with ethanol 96% and aqueous decoction of the residue	Capsella/Majorana comp.	
Oxalis acetosella L.	Fresh leaves of Oxalis acetosella L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.7, 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%), HAB 12a (after Ph.Eur. 1.1.3), 21; maceration with ethanol 36% (DER 1:1.3).	Belladonna/Oxalis ; Belladonna/ Papaver comp.; Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Formica/Oxalis; Malva/ Millefolium/ Oxalis; Oxalis; Oxalis comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Oxalis acetosella L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L.		HAB 12c, 34b	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Berberis/ Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Carduus marianus/Oxalis ; Formica/Oxalis; Oxalis; Oxalis/Quarz comp.; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Tropaeolum comp.	
Oxalis acetosella L.	Dried flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L		HAB 12f	Oxalis	
Paeonia officinalis L. emend. Willd.	Fresh underground parts of Paeonia officinalis L. emend. Willd., collected during spring	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.11, HAB 33c	Carduus benedictus/Paeonia officinalis; Hirudo comp.	
Panax ginseng C.A. Mey.	Whole or cut dried root, designated white ginseng; treated with steam and then dried, designated red ginseng, of Panax ginseng C.A. Mey.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		Vademecum: Ginseng
Papaver rhoeas L.	Fresh flowers of Papaver rhoeas L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 12a (Ph.Eur. 1.1.3), 33c	Papaver rhoeas	
Papaver somniferum L.	Fresh latex obtained from incisions in unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.		Extraction with ethanol 36% (DER 1:100)	Papaver somniferum	
Papaver somniferum L.	Fresh unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 33c	Belladonna/Papaver comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Papaver somniferum	
Paris quadrifolia L.	Whole fresh plants of Paris quadrifolia L., collected when the fruits have ripened	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		
Parmelia	see Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl.				
Passiflora alata Curtis	dried leaves of Passiflora alata Curtis containing at least 1.0% of total flavonoids, expressed in apigenin	Farmacopéia Brasileira			
Passiflora alata Curtis	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora alata Curtis		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		ABMA-Vademecum
Passiflora caerulea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora caerulea L. collected at flowering time		HAB 33c, extraction with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Avena/Passiflora comp.; Hypericum/ Passiflora comp.; Passiflora comp.	
Passiflora incarnata L.	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora incarnata L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Avena sativa comp.; Passiflora incarnata	
Peat	see Solum uliginosum				
Pelargonium graveolens Ait. and other Pelargonium species	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from the aerial parts of suitable species of Pelargonium e.g. Pelargonium graveolens Ait.		API	Malva comp.; Rosae aetheroleum/ Silicea colloidalis comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb	Fresh rhizome of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb. with attached roots		HAB 33c	Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica ; Petasites, Radix ; Petasites/ Plantago comp.; Plantago comp.	
Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Petasites, Planta tota	
Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill	Whole fresh flowering plants of Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill convar. crispum, collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W. D. J. Koch	Fresh rhizome of Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W.D.J. Koch		Ph. Eur. 1.2.10, ethanolic decoction (1:2.15) (ethanol 50%)	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.	
Peumus boldus Molina	Whole or fragmented dried leaf of Peumus boldus Molina.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Boldo
Phyllitis scolopendrium L. (Asplenium scolopendrium L.)	Fresh spore-bearing leaves of Phyllitis scolopendrium L.		HAB 34h, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs, 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aquilinum comp.; Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.	Nodes from the stem of Phyllostachys species, especially Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv., collected in summer		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 35c	Bambusa ; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Phytolacca americana L. (Ph. decandra)	Fresh roots of Phytolacca americana L., collected during autumn	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Phytolacca; Phytolacca comp.	
Phytolacca americana L.	Fresh ripe fruits of Phytolacca americana L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Picea abies (L.) Karst., Abies sibirica Ledebour & other species	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of needles and tips of branches or branches of Picea abies (L.) Karst. and of Abies sibirica Ledebour or other species of the genera Abies and Picea	DAB	API	Salviae aetheroleum comp.	
Picea abies (L.) Karst.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Picea abies (L.) Karst.		Extraction with Water:Sucrose (1:1) (DER 1:5)	Petasites/Plantago comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Pimpinella anisum L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the dry ripe fruits of Pimpinella anisum L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Berberis/ Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Bolus alba comp.; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Lichenes comp.	
Pimpinella anisum L.	Whole dry cremocarp of Pimpinella anisum L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%), 1.4.4	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp. ; Anis-Pyrit ; Antimonit/Anisum; Centaurium comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Ferrum/Anisum; Levisticum comp.; Sirupus Thymi comp.; Verbascum comp.	
Pinus mugo Turra	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and twigs of Pinus mugo Turra.	Ph.Eur.	API	Archangelica comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp.	
Pinus pinaster Aiton and/or Pinus massoniana D.Don.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation, followed by rectification at a temperature below 180 °C, from the oleoresin obtained by tapping Pinus pinaster Aiton and/or Pinus massoniana D.Don.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Juniperus comp.	
Pinus sylvestris L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and branches of Pinus sylvestris L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Archangelica comp. ; Oleum camphoratum comp.	
Pinus sylvestris L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of fresh needles and tips or fresh branches with needles and tips of the twigs of Pinus sylvestris L. or other species of the genus Pinus.	DAB	API		
Piper nigrum L.	Dried, ripe or nearly ripe fruit of Piper nigrum L. with an unbroken pericarp (black pepper) or with the outer layers of the pericarp removed (white pepper)	Ph.Eur.	aqueous extraction together with other drugs, aqueous extraction with sucrose	Gentiana/Zingiber comp.	
Pix betulina	Birch tar see Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrhart				
Plantago lanceolata L.	Fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (ethanol 45%), HAB 34c, App. 2.6: Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., ethanol.Digestio (1:3.1) with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø; aqueous extraction with sucrose (1:1) (DER 1:5)	Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Petasites comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Petasites comp. cum Veronica ; Petasites/Plantago comp.; Phytolacca comp.; Plantago comp.; Plantago lanceolata ; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Polygala senega L.	Dried and usually fragmented root and root crown of Polygala senega L. or of certain other closely related species or of a mixture of these Polygala species.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Senega
Polygonatum odoratum (Mill.) Druce	Fresh, underground parts of Polygonatum odoratum (Mill.) Druce		Ph. Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 33d	Vespa crabro comp.	
Polypodium vulgare L.	Fresh leaves of Polypodium vulgare L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.5, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2.	Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.	
Populus tremula L.	Fresh leaves of Populus tremula L.		Ph. Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%) together with fresh bark 1:1 (see Populus tremula, fresh bark), HAB 33d	Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Populus tremula L.	fresh bark of Populus tremula L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%) together with leaves 1:1 (see Populus tremula, fresh leaves)		
Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.	Whole or cut, dried rhizome, freed from the roots, of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch. (P. tormentilla Stokes)	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%)	Corallium comp.; Hydrastis comp.; Tormentilla	
Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.	Fresh underground parts of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch., collected during spring	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21, 34d	Tormentilla ; Tormentilla comp.	
Poterium	see Sarcopoterium spinosum (L.) Spach.				
Primula farinosa L.	Fresh roots of Primula farinosa L.		Ph.Eur. 1.4.2		
Primula veris L.	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.5, HAB 21, 33c. See App.2.6: Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø; Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1: 12.35) with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø;	Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Cimicifuga comp. ; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Onopordon comp.; Onopordon comp./Adonis ; Onopordon comp./Magnesium phosphoricum acidum ; Onopordon comp./Oleander; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Arnica ; Onopordon comp./ Oleander/ Convallaria; Onopordon comp./Plumbum ; Onopordum/ Primula comp.; Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo ; Primula Auro culta ; Primula Auro culta comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Primula veris L.	Dried flowers of Primula veris L.	DAC	HAB 12g	Primula comp.	
Prunus dulcis (Miller) D. A. Webb var. dulcis and/or amara (D. C.) Buchheim	Fatty oil otained by cold expression from the ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A. Webb var. dulcis or Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A. Webb var. amara (DC.) Buchheim or a mixture of both varieties	Ph.Eur.	API (and excipient)	Oleum Petrae comp.	
Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A.Webb var. amara (DC.) Buchheim	Dried, ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A.Webb, var. amara (DC.) Buchheim	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Prunus laurocerasus L.	Fresh leaves of Prunus laurocerasus L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, see also App. 2.7: Laurocerasus 100%		
Prunus spinosa L.	Juice from the fruit of Prunus spinosa L.		API	Lotio Pruni comp.; Prunus spinosa; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh flowers and young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L., harvested at the beginning of the blooming season	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Aurum/Prunus ; Levico comp.; Prunus spinosa; Prunus spinosa cum Ferro ; Skorodit comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh flowers of Prunus spinosa L., collected before the petals drop off	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh fruit of Prunus spinosa L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%) HAB 12o; extraction with ethanol 24,5% (DER 1:4)	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Berberis/ Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/ Prunus ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Cactus/Crataegus comp.; Echinacea/ Prunus comp.; Prunus spinosa; Prunus/ Rosmarinus comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L., collected some weeks after flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 22	Aqua Maris comp.; Aqua Maris/Prunus spinosa, Summitates ; Aurum/Prunus ; Crataegus/Prunus comp.; Formica/ Prunus spinosa; Prunus spinosa	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fully opened dried flowers of Prunus spinosa L.	DAC	HAB 12g	Malva comp.; Prunus spinosa	
Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes	Dried underground organs of Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol (70%)	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.; Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Ipecacuanha ; Sirupus Thymi comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Ipeca
Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn	Fresh leaves of Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn		Ph.Eur. 1.2.5, HAB 34c, APC 3.8.1 (together with other fresh herbal drugs 1:4.1 parts ethanol 25%), 3.8.2	Aquilinum comp.; Arum maculatum/ Pteridium aquilinum ; Conchae comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Pulmonaria officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Pulmonaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		
Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Echinacea comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.; Pulsatilla ; Sirupus Thymi comp.	Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	Fresh flowers of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill. with apical leaf husk.		HAB 33c	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Berberis/Nicotiana comp. ; Bryonia/ Pulsatilla comp.; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Hirudo comp.; Pulsatilla	
Pyrus malus	see Malus sylvestris Mill.				
Quebracho	see Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco Schlechtend.				
Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.	Fresh bark from young twigs, branches and shoots of Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.		HAB 12k	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Quercus, Cortex	
Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl., Quercus pubescens Willd.	Cut and dried bark from the fresh young branches of Quercus robur L., Q. petraea (Matt.) Liebl. or Quercus pubescens Willd.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), 1.4.3, HAB 12q, APC 4.3	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Apatit/ Conchae; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Calcium carbonicum cum Quercu ; Capsella/Majorana comp. ; Conchae/ Quercus comp.; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Lobelia comp.; Petasites comp. cum Quercu ; Pharmakolith comp.; Quercus comp.; Quercus, Cortex	.
Ranunculus bulbosus L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Ranunculus bulbosus L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Primula Auro culta comp.	
Raphanus sativus L. var niger (Mill.) J. Kern	Fresh underground parts of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Mill.) J. Kern.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Miller) Kerner	Dried root of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Miller) Kerner	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (ethanol 55%)		
Ratanhia	see Krameria triandra Ruiz. et Pav.				
Rauvolfia serpentina (L.) Bentham ex Kurz	Whole or cut, dried roots of Rauvolfia serpentina (L.) Bentham ex Kurz	DAB; HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Rauwolfia serpentina	
Resina Laricis	see Larix decidua Mill.				
Rhamnus frangula	Fresh bark of the stems and branches of Frangula alnus Mill.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33c, 33e	Tropaeolum comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Rheum officinale Baillon, Rheum palmatum L.	Rhubarb consists of the whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum palmatum L. or of Rheum officinale Baillon or of hybrids of these two species or of a mixture. The underground parts are often divided; the stem and most of the bark with the rootlets are removed.	Ph.Eur.	Ph. Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Rheum rhaponticum L.	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum rhaponticum L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		Vademecum: Rheum rhaponticum (ext.)
Rhododendron chrysanthum Pall., Rhododendron aureum Georgi	Dried leafy twigs of Rhododendron campylocarpum Hook. f. and Rhododendron aureum Georgi or their hybrids, allone or mixtures thereof	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Fresh, flowering, leafy, twigs of Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr
Rhus toxicodendron L.	Fresh, young leafy twigs of Rhus toxicodendron L., harvested in summer	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Rhus toxicodendron L. (Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene	Fresh, young, not yet lignified shoots of Rhus toxicodendron L. with leaves	BP; HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d		
Rhus toxicodendron L. (Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene	Fresh leaves of Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene		Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d	Aconitum comp.; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus toxicodendron; Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Ribes nigrum L.	Fresh leaves of Ribes nigrum L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		
Ricinus communis L.	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from the seeds of Ricinus communis L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/Juniperus comp.	
Ricinus communis L.	Dried seeds of Ricinus communis L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)		
Robinia pseudoacacia L.	Fresh bark from young branches of Robinia pseudoacacia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), 1.2.9, HAB 33e	Robinia comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Rosa gallica L., Rosa damascena Mill. and Rosa centifolia L.	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa, particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa damascena Mill. and Rosa centifolia L.		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 96%), API (HAB 16.2)	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Belladonna /Rosae aetheroleum; Cineraria/Rosae aetheroleum; Cornea/ Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum/ Hornerz comp.; Echinacea/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Rosae aetheroleum; Euphrasia/Rosae aetheroleum; Iris bovis comp.; Mercurialis / Rosae aetheroleum; Nervus opticus comp.; Rosa, Flos; Rosae aetheroleum/Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Rosa damascena L. and Rosa centifolia L.	Substance obtained by stepwise extraction with petrolether and ethanol from fresh flowers of Rosa damascena L. and Rosa centifolia L. (DER ca. 500:1)		API	Aurum/Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa	
Rosa L.	Fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly dark red tea hybrids		HAB 37a	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites; Rosa, Flos	
Rosa gallica L., Rosa centifolia L., Rosa damascena Mill.	Dried buds and petals of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa centifolia L., Rosa damascena Mill. as well as dark red tea hybrids		HAB 12f	Rosa, Flos	
Rosa centifolia L.	Fresh petals of Rosa centifolia L.		see App.2.6: Ferrum rosatum	Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Rosa, Flos	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering aerial parts of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	API	Aconitum/ Arnica comp./ Apis; Aconitum/ Arnica comp./Formica; Aconitum/Nicotiana comp.; Aesculus, Cortex/Rosmarini aetheroleum; Apis/ Arnica comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Arnica comp./ Formica ; Arnica/Symphytum comp. ; Ceratum benzoinatum; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Oleum lactagogum; Primula comp. ; Prunus/ Rosmarinus comp.; Resina Laricis/ Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Rosmarini aetheroleum/Tabacum ; Rosmarinus comp.; Rosmarinöl; Sal Maris comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Vespa crabro comp.	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Betonica/Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Fresh flowering twigs of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus comp.	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Whole dried leaf of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%), 1.4.4	Betonica/Rosmarinus ; Rosmarinus	
Rumex crispus L.	Fresh underground parts of Rumex crispus L., harvested at the end of the vegetation period	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Rumex crispus	
Ruta graveolens L.	Fresh aerial parts of Ruta graveolens L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33c	Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp.; Ruta graveolens; Symphytum comp.	
Ruta graveolens L.	Fresh, aerial, unlignified parts of Ruta graveolens L. harvested before flowering	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Sabadilla	see Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray				
Sabal serrulatum	see Serenoa repens (W. Bartram) Small.				
Sabina	see Juniperus sabina L.				
Saccharum officinarum L.	Caramel obtained through the roasting of sucrose from Saccharum officinarum L.		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with purified water), 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 4.1.1 (together with Anisi fructus)	Anis-Pyrit ; Basilicum comp.; Crataegus/Ferrum sidereum/ Saccharum tostum	
Saccharum tostum	see Saccharum officinarum L.				
Salix alba ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix alba ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang.		HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Passiflora comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.	
Salix purpurea L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix purpurea L.		HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Rhus/ Salix comp.	
Salix species	Fresh leaves of Salix alba, ssp. alba L. and/or ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang. and/or Salix purpurea L. and/or Salix viminalis L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.5, APC 3.8.2, ethanolic maceration (ethanol 25%)	Aspidium/Salix comp. ; Chelidonium comp.	
Salix species	Whole or fragmented dried bark of young branches or whole dried pieces of current-year twigs of various species of genus Salix including S. purpurea L., S. daphnoides Vill. and S. fragilis L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)		
Salix viminalis L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix viminalis L.		HAB 33d	Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Rhus/ Salix comp.	
Salvia officinalis L.	Thujone-rich essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the aerial parts of Salvia officinalis L.	DAC	API	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Majorana/ Thuja comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Salviae aetheroleum comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Salvia officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Salvia officinalis L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 33d, 12c	Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Calendula/ Echinacea comp.	
Salvia officinalis L.	Whole or cut, dried leaves of Salvia officinalis L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 70%), API	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.; Fragaria/ Urtica comp.; Levisticum comp.; Salvia comp.	
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.		HAB 35a	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra L.	Dried pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%)	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh, blooming flower heads of Sambucus nigra L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Sambucus nigra, flos
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.		HAB 33c	Phytolacca comp.; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra L.	Dried flowers of Sambucus nigra L.	Ph.Eur.	HAB 12g	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz; Malva comp.; Sambucus comp.	
Sambucus nigra L.	Equal parts of fresh leaves and inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Sambucus/Teucrium comp.	
Sanguinaria canadensis L.	Dried underground parts of Sanguinaria canadensis L., collected in autumn	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Calendula comp. ; Oxalis comp.; Sanguinaria; Sanguinaria comp.	
Sanicula europaea L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Sanicula europaea L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Cichorium comp.	
Sarothamnus scoparius	see Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.				
Sarsaparilla	see Smilax species				
Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray (Syn.: Sabadilla officinarum Brandt & Ratzeb.)	Dried ripe seeds of Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
Scilla	see Urginea maritima (L.) Bak.				
Scolopendrium	see Phyllitis scolopendrium (L.) Newm.				
Secale cornutum	see Claviceps purpurea (Fr.) Tul.				
Sedum acre L.	Fresh aerial parts of Sedum acre L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose	Fresh young stem and flowers of Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.3, HAB 33d	Arnica/Cactus comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Cactus grandiflorus ; Cactus/ Crataegus ; Cactus/Crataegus comp.; Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Cactus/Melissa comp. ; Cactus/ Strophantus kombe ; Crataegus comp. ; Sarothamnus comp.	
Semecarpus anacardium L.	Dried fruit of Semecarpus anarcardium L. (Anacardium orientale L.)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	acc. to monograph Ph.Eur. (1.1.10, ethanol 90%) or HAB monograph (and Ph.Eur. 1.1.8)		
Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod.	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod., collected before flowering		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7	Cineraria maritima; Cineraria/Rosae aetheroleum	
Senecio jacobaea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio jacobaea L., collected at flowering time		HAB 33d	Senecio comp.	
Senega	see Polygala senega L.				
Senna	see Cassia angustifolia Vahl.				
Serenoa repens (W. Bartram) Small (Syn. Sabal serrulata (Michaux) T. Nuttal ex Schultes & Schultes	Dried ripe fruit of Serenoa repens (W. Bartram) Small (Syn. Sabal serrulata (Michaux) T. Nuttal ex Schultes & Schultes	Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertn.	Mature fruit, devoid of the pappus, of Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertner	HAB; Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	According to the relevant monograph (HAB or Ph.fr.)	Aesculus/Quercus comp.; Anagallis comp.; Carduus marianus ; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Carduus marianus/Oxalis ; Chelidonium comp.; Lycopodium comp.	
Smilax aristolochiifolia Mill. (Syn.: S. medica Schlechtend. et Cham)	Dried underground parts of Smilax aristolochiifolia Mill. (S. medica Schlechtend. et Cham) and related species	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Sarsaparilla
Solanum dulcamara L.	Fresh flowers of Solanum dulcamara L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.11; decoction with water and ethanol 96% (12:9.5)(DER 1:2.15)	Dulcamara/Lysimachia	
Solanum dulcamara L.	Dried, lignified stems of Solanum dulcamara L.	DAB 6 Erg.B.	Aqueous decoction together with other drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Solanum dulcamara L.	Fresh, young, blooming, leafy-stem of Solanum dulcamara L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)		
Solanum lycopersicum	see Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.				
Solidago virgaurea L.	Fresh inflorescence of Solidago virgaurea L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)	Aquilinum comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.	
Solidago virgaurea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Solidago virgaurea L., collected at flowering time		HAB 12c, 33c	Aesculus/Prunus comp. ; Berberis/ Juniperus comp. ; Scilla comp.; Solidago virgaurea	
Solum uliginosum	Fresh moist peat from moorland [e.g. upland moor]		see App. 2.6: Peat moss extract composition I and Peat moss extract composition II	Solum uliginosum comp.	Vademecum: Solum
Spartium scoparium	see Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.				
Spigelia anthelmia L.	Dried aerial parts of Spigelia anthelmia L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 90%)		
Spinacia oleracea L.	Fresh underground parts of Spinacia oleracea L.		HAB 34f	Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Senecio comp.	
Spiraea	see Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim.				
Spiritus e vino	see Vitis vinifera L.				
Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev.	Fresh aerial parts of Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Betonica/Rosmarinus	
Staphysagria	see Delphinium staphisagria L.				
Sticta	see Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm.				
Stramonium	see Datura stramonium L.				
Strophanthus kombe Oliv.	Fatty oil from the seeds of Strophanthus kombe Oliv.		API	Cinis Arnicae comp.; Oleum Strophanthi ; Onopordon comp./ Adonis	
Strophanthus kombe Oliv.	Dried ripe seeds of Strophanthus kombé Oliv.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.6 (ethanol 70%), HAB 35b	Aurum/Strophanthus kombe ; Aurum/ Valeriana comp.; Cactus/Strophantus kombe ; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Oleum Strophanthi ; Strophanthus comp.; Strophanthus kombe	
Strychnos ignatii P.J. Bergius	Dried, ripe seeds of Strychnos ignatii J.P. Bergius.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%, 3-5 weeks), HAB 35b	Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Ignatia; Ignatia comp.; Sepia comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Strychnos nux-vomica L.	Dried, ripe seeds of Strychnos nux-vomica L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); HAB 35b	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Gentiana comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Nux vomica ; Nux vomica comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.; Robinia comp.	
Styrax tonkinensis	see Benzoe				
Symphytum officinale L.	Fresh underground parts of Symphytum officinale L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.11, HAB 34c	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Antimonit comp.; Arnica comp.; Arnica/ Symphytum comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Salvia comp.; Stannum/Symphytum comp. ; Symphytum; Symphytum comp.	
Symphytum officinale L.	Fresh aerial parts of Symphytum officinale L., collected at flowering time		HAB 12c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula/ Urtica comp.	
Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dried flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison)	Ph.Eur.	API	Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Resina Laricis/Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Solutio Myrrhae balsamica; Spiritus contra tussim; Spiritus Melissae comp.	
Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Whole flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L.M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison) dried until they become reddish-brown	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.2.13; ethanolic distillate (together with other drugs)	Absinthium/Caryophylli comp. ; Centaurium comp.	
Tabacum	see Nicotiana tabacum L.				
Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg. (fr.: Taraxacum officinale Weber)	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 21, 34c	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.; Aquilinum comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Chrysosplenium comp.; Cichorium/ Taraxacum comp.; Gentiana comp.; Taraxacum; Taraxacum Stanno cultum; Taraxacum Stanno cultum/Hepar Bovis	
Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg.	Fresh underground parts of Taraxacum officinale F.H. Wigg. collected in autumn (autumnale) or spring (vernale)		HAB 34c; Ph.Eur. 1.1.2 (the latex only is processed)	Taraxacum	
Tartarus crudus	see Vitis vinifera L.				
Teucrium marum L.	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of Teucrium marum L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Teucrium scorodonia L.	Fresh aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Kalium/Teucrium comp.; Sambucus/ Teucrium comp.; Teucrium scorodonia	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Teucrium scorodonia L.	Dried aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.		API, APC 4.3	Species pulmonales; Teucrium scorodonia	
Thuja occidentalis L.	Fresh leafy branches of Thuja occidentalis L., collected preferably in spring	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)		
Thuja occidentalis L.	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 12c, 22, 33e	Argentum nitricum comp. ; Argentum/ Urtica comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Majorana/Thuja comp.; Primula Auro culta comp.; Sabal/Solidago comp.; Thuja comp. ; Thuja occidentalis; Thuja occidentalis Argento culta; Vespa crabro comp.	
Thymus serpyllum L. emend. Mill.	Whole or cut, dried, flowering aerial parts of Thymus serpyllum L.	Ph.Eur.	Decoction with water, together with other herbal drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Thymus vulgaris L., T. zygis L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh flowering aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., T. zygis L. or a mixture of both species	Ph.Eur.	HAB 12i, API	Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Majorana/ Thuja comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Thymi aetheroleum ; Thymus serpyllum comp.	
Thymus vulgaris L.	Fresh aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5		
Thymus vulgaris L., Thymus zygis L.	Whole leaves and flowers separated from the previously dried stems of Thymus vulgaris L. or Thymus zygis L. or a mixture of both species.	Ph.Eur.	Decoction with water, together with other herbal drugs	Sirupus Thymi comp.	
Tilia cordata Miller, Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli	Fresh inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller and Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli	HAB 34	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5	Flores Sambuci comp./Quarz	
Tilia cordata Miller, Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli, Tilia x vulgaris Heyne	Whole, dried inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller, of Tilia platyphyllos Scop., of Tilia x vulgaris Heyne or a mixture of these	Ph.Eur.	HAB 12g	Malva comp.	
Tormentilla	see Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.				
Toxicodendron	see Rhus toxicodendron L.				
Toxicodendron quercifolium	see Rhus toxicodendron L.				
Triticum aestivum L.	Fatty oil obtained from the germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. by cold expression or other suitable mechanical means and/or by extraction. It is then refined.	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp.	
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh germinated fruit of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), HAB 33d	Hirnstamm/Triticum	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh parts projecting out of the infloresence spikelet of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		HAB 33d		
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Dried germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. emend Fiori et Paol.		API	Hirnstamm/Triticum; Levisticum comp.	
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Wheat gluten		Starting material for the preparation of Calicum silicicum comp. (app. 2.6)		
Triticum repens	see Elymus repens (L.) Gould				
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Dried inflorescences of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%), 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.1)	Flores Tritici comp.	
Tropaeolum majus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Tropaeolum majus L., collected at flowering time		HAB 12c, 33b, 33c	Bellis/Tropaeolum; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Placenta/ Tropaeolum ; Tropaeolum comp.	
Tulipa silvestris L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Tulipa silvestris L.		HAB 33a		Vademecum: Tulipa
Urginea maritima (L.) Baker sensu latiore (e.g. Urginea numidica [Jord. et Fourr.] Grey)	Fresh, fleshy scale leaves of the red-scaled subspecies of Urginea maritima (L.) Baker sensu latiore (e.g. Urginea numidica [Jord. et Fourr.] Grey) with a clearly detectable scilliroside content	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.2.3, HAB 33b	Adonis/Scilla comp.; Convallaria/ Primula comp.; Scilla alba; Scilla comp.	
Urtica dioica L.	Whole, fresh, flowering plants of Urtica dioica L.	HAB; Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.4, 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%), HAB 33c; extraction with ethanol 73% and sucrose (3:2) (Drug:excipient 1:0.9)	Aqua Maris comp.; Berberis e fructibus comp.; Chelidonium comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica/Gentiana; Tropaeolum comp.; Urtica dioica	
Urtica dioica L.	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.4, 1.1.7 and 4.2.1, HAB 21	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp. ; Urtica dioica ; Urtica dioica Ferro culta	
Urtica dioica L.	Dried flowers of Urtica dioica L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13, infusion with ethanol 33% (DER 1:6) or with water together with other herbal drugs	Capsella/Majorana comp.	
Urtica dioica L.	Dried, aerial parts with maximum 3 mm thick stems of Urtica dioica L., collected shortly before flowering		HAB 12g	Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Levisticum comp.; Urtica dioica	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Urtica dioica L.	Fresh underground parts of Urtica dioica L.		HAB 21 (see App.2.5 Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Radix)	Urtica dioica ; Urtica dioica Ferro culta	
Urtica urens L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Urtica urens L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 45%)	Berberis, Planta tota/Urtica urens ; Primula Auro culta comp.	
Urtica urens L.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of Urtica urens L.	BP; HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, 1.1.4, HAB 12c, 33c	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Arnica/Urtica urens ; Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/Sabal comp. ; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Calendula/Urtica comp. ; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Urtica comp.	
Urtica urens L.	Dried, aerial parts of Urtica urens L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.13 (ethanol 36%), 1.4.4	Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba	
Usnea barbata (L.) Wigg.	Dried thallus from Usnea P. Br. ex Adans. species, especially Usnea barbata (L.) Wigg.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%); extraction with water together with other lichens (DER 1:6)	Lichenes comp.	
Uva ursi	see Arctostaphylos uva-ursi				
Valeriana officinalis L.	Fresh, underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 55%)		Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Valeriana officinalis L. sensu latiore	Fresh underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. sensu latiore	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.9, HAB 33c, extract with water and sucrose (2:4:4)	Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Avena comp. ; Avena sativa comp.; Avena/Passiflora comp.; Cinis Arnicae comp.; Hyoscyamus/Valeriana; Hypericum/Passiflora comp.; Valeriana comp.	
Valeriana officinalis L.	Dried, whole or fragmented underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. s.l., including the rhizome surrounded by the roots and stolons	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%)		
Vaucheria DC species	Fresh, whole organism of Vaucheria DC species		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Vaucheria	
Veratrum album L.	Carefully dried rhizome with attached roots of Veratrum album L.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.2.12 (ethanol 70%)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.; Veratrum album	
Veratrum album L.	Fresh, underground parts of Veratrum album L.		HAB 33c	Equisetum/Renes comp.; Skorodit comp.; Veratrum album ; Veratrum comp.	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.	Fresh, unripe fruits of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7	Verbascum comp.	
Veronica officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Veronica officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 50%), APC 4.3	Lobelia comp.; Veronica officinalis	
Veronica officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Veronica officinalis L., collected at flowering time		Ph. Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 33c	Veronica officinalis	
Vinum	see Vitis vinifera L.				
Viola tricolor L.	Fresh aerial parts of Viola tricolor L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 33e	Tropaeolum comp.	
Virola sebifera Aubl.	Fresh juice of Virola sebifera Aubl. obtained by incising the bark, and preserved with an approximately equal volume of ethanol (96 %) (Ph.Eur.)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see mon. HAB (sol. with ethanol 70%))	Myristica sebifera; Myristica sebifera comp.	
Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Abrom.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies species)		HAB 34g	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC)	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC); fir)		APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Populus species)		HAB 33f	Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus species)		HAB 34g	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; Apple tree)		APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; Pine)		APC 7.2.2	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fresh haustorium of Viscum album L ssp. album (Host tree: Malus species)		HAB 33e	Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. album	Dried plant including fruit, excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Oak species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Crataegus species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Salix species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Dried branches with leaves, flowers, fruit of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host trees: Malus species)		HAB 12g	Viscum album	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Viscum album L. ssp. album	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; Apple tree)		HAB 34i	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryonia/ Viscum comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Echinacea/Viscum; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Equisetum/Viscum; Lens cristallina/ Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lilium tigrinum comp.; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Tiliae species; lime tree)		HAB 33f	Crataegus/Viscum ; Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch.	Dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch. (Host tree: Abies species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. album L.	Dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.)Vollm.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.)Vollm. (host tree: Pinus species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. album	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: Populus species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album L. ssp. album	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: Tilia species)		HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom.	Fresh one-year shoots from male and female plants incl. ripe berries of the winter harvest (Host tree: Abies alba)		HAB 32	Viscum album	
Vitex agnus-castus L.	whole, ripe, dried fruits of Vitex agnus-castus L.	(HAB); Ph.Eur.; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.8 (ethanol 70%), 1.1.10 (ethanol 65%)	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Vitis vinifera L.	Distilled red wine vinegar (acetum vini destillatum)		see App. 2.6 (Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Vitis vinifera L.	Red wine vinegar (acetum vini)		Distillation (to get distilled red wine vinegar)		

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Vitis vinifera L.	Dried leaves of Vitis vinifera L.		Ph.Eur. 1.2.12 (ethanol 36%), API	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Fragaria/Vitis; Vitis comp.	
Vitis vinifera L.	Distillate of wine		Vehicle for preparing a tincture of Crocus sativus (see App. 2.6, Kalium aceticum comp.)		
Vitis vinifera L.	Cream of tartar (Tartarus crudus)		raw material for the production of Tartarus stibiatus and Solutio alkalina		
Vitis vinifera L.	White wine		Distillation (for preparing distillate of wine), raw material for the production of Ferrum-Quarz (see app. 2.6)		
Zingiber officinale Roscoe	Dried, whole or cut rhizome of Zingiber officinale Roscoe, with the cork removed, either completely or from the wide, flat surfaces only	Ph.Eur.	Aqueous extract together with other herbal drugs	Gentiana/Zingiber comp.	

APPENDIX 2.3

List of starting materials of zoological origin

Additional Information, see p. 15-16 and pp. 63-68

Abbreviation *: p. 63

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Acidum Formicae (Acidum formicicum e formica; Acidum Formicae venenum)	Several species of wood ants of the Subgenus Formica s. str. (e.g. Formica lugubris Zett., F. polyctena Förster, F. paralugubris Seifert or F. rufa L.)	Aqueous solution of the secretion of wood ants of the subgenus Formica s. str., containing not less than 1.2% m/m of formic acid		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 3.1.2; D2 is standardized to 1.0% formic acid		Liste HAS (10.2012)
Ambra grisea	Physeter catodon L. (Physeter macrocephalus L.)	Substance produced in the digestive system of the sperm whale	HAB; Ph.fr.	HAB Ambra grisea, Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (Ph.fr. Ethanol 90%)	Zincum valerianicum comp.	
Amnion	Bos taurus L.	Amnion from the bovine foetus		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Amnion
Anus	Bos taurus L.	Anus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Aorta	Bos taurus L.	Different sections of the aorta from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Atropa belladonna e radice]
Aorta	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Aorta from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		IVAA statement 2013
Apis mellifica	Apis mellifera L.	Live worker honey bee	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	acc.to monograph (60-70% ethanol); HAB monograph; Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Apis; Apis comp.; Apis cum Levistico; Apis mellifica; Apis/Arnica; Apis/Arnica comp.; Apis/Belladonna; Apis/Belladonna/Mercurius; Apis/Berberis comp.; Apis/Bryonia; Apis/Larynx comp.; Apis/Levisticum; Apis/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Arnica/Levisticum comp. ; Berberis/Pyrit comp. ; Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Bryonia/Pulsatilla comp.; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Echinacea/Mercurius comp.; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Eucalyptus comp. ; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.	
Apis regina	Apis mellifera L.	Whole queen cell with larvae and nourishing sap		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Apis regina comp.; Apis regina/Aurum comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Ovaria comp.; Testes comp.	
Apisinum	Apis mellifera L.	Dried poison from the honey bee	HAB	Monograph	Bolus Eucalypti comp.; Zinnober comp.	
Appendix vermiformis	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Vermiform process of the blind gut from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Aranea avicularis	Avicularia avicularia L.	Whole bird spider		Ph.Eur. 1.1.9 (ethanol 90%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Mygale comp.	IVAA statement 2013
Aranea diadema	Araneus diadematus Clerk	Whole diadem spider	(HAB 1924)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.9 (HAB 1924: 90% Ethanol), 2.1.1, 2.2.3		Vademecum: Aranea
Arteria basilaris*	Bos taurus L.	Arteria basilaris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria brachialis	Bos taurus L.	Arteria brachialis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus	Bos taurus L.	Parts from the Arteria carotis communis dextra and sinistra from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus
Arteria cerebri media*	Bos taurus L.	Arteria carotis cerebralis and its ramifications from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria cerebri media
Arteria coeliaca		see Truncus coeliacus				IVAA statement 2013
Arteria coronaria	Bos taurus L.	Arteria coronaria from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria coronaria
Arteria femoralis	Bos taurus L.	Arteria femoralis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Secale/Bleiglanz comp.]
Arteria ophthalmica*	Bos taurus L.	Arteria ophthalmica externa from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteria ophthalmica
Arteria poplitea	Bos taurus L.	Arteria poplitea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Bleiglanz/Secale comp.	
Arteria pulmonalis	Bos taurus L.	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria renalis	Bos taurus L.	Arteria renalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Arteria vertebralis	Bos taurus L.	Parts from the Arteria vertebralis dextra and sinistra from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		
Arteriae*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of Arteria basilaris, Arteria brachialis, Arteria coronaria, Arteria femoralis, Arteria mesenterica, Arteria pulmonalis and Arteria renalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Arteriae
Articulatio	Bos taurus L.	The following articulations: cubits, genus, humeri, radiocarpa, sacroiliaca, subtalaris, talocruralis, temporomandibularis		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2, APC 3.3.1		Liste HAS (10.2012) ABMA-Vademecum: Articulatio-Argentum p. 49

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Articulatio coxae	Bos taurus L.	Hip joint with equal parts from the acetabulum, Caput femoris, joint cartilage and Ligamentum capitis femoris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Articulatio coxae	
Articulatio cubiti	Bos taurus L.	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio genus	Bos taurus L.	Knee joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, meniscus, joint capsule, ligaments, cartilage and synovia from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Articulatio genus	
Articulatio humeri	Bos taurus L.	Shoulder joint with parts of the bones that form the joint, cartilage, parts of the joint capsule and the Bursa intertubercularis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Aconit Schmerzöl]
Articulatio interphalangea	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the toe joint from the fore extremities from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Cartilago/Echinacea comp.	
Articulatio radiocarpea	Bos taurus L.	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio sacroiliaca	Bos taurus L.	Parts of Ilium and sacrum from the joint area, joint capsule and ligaments from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Articulatio subtalaris	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the cartilage, joint capsule and synovia of the part distal to the Os centroquartale of the joint like union between Talus and Calcaneus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Articulatio talocruralis	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, Tibia and Talus, of the joint capsule, ligaments as well as synovia of the ankle joint from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Articulatio temporomandibularis	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Os mandibulare and of the Os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Articulationes intercarpeae	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	Bos taurus L.	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	Bos taurus L.	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ascidia	Several species of proto-Chordates of Ascidia group	The whole animal		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Arteriae-Barium p. 48
Atlas*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Auditum	Bos taurus L.	The whole hearing organ (parts of cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Auditum-Argentum p. 51
Auditum internum	Bos taurus L.	Internal hearing organ (parts of cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear and labyrinthus from the calf).		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Labyrinthus-Mercurius p. 161
Axis*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Axis (2. cerivical) from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Bronchi	Bos taurus L.	Bronchi from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	
Bronchi	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Bronchi from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	
Bulbus olfactorius*	Bos taurus L.	Bulbus olfactorius of both hemispheres of the cerebrum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Bulbus olfactorius
Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex	Bos taurus L.	Parts of Bursa musculi infraspinam and Bursa intertubercularis humeri from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex
Calcarea carbonica ostrearum		see Conchae	Ph.fr.			
Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni		see Conchae				

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cantharis	Lytta vesicatoria L.	As far as possible intact specimens, killed and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C	HAB	Ph.Eur. 1.1.9 (HAB: Ethanol 90%), 2.2.3	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Calendula/ Urtica comp. ; Cantharis ; Cantharis comp. ; Hypericum comp.; Uva ursi comp.	Vademecum: Cantharis
Cardia	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Cardia, parts of the wall of the stomach in the region of the entrance into the stomach from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Cardia
Cartilago	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Cartilage of joint from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Cartilago articularis	Bos taurus L.	Cartilage of the hip, knee and shoulder joints from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Cartilago comp. ; Cartilago/Hornerz comp. ; Cartilago/Mandragora comp.	
Cartilago articularis coxae	Bos taurus L.	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Cartilago articularis genus	Bos taurus L.	Cartilage of the knee joint from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Cavum tympani*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the wall of the Cavum tympani, as well as auditory bones from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Cavum tympani
Cera flava		Wax obtained by melting the walls of the honeycomb made by the honey-bee, Apis mellifera L., with hot water and removing foreign matter	Ph.Eur.	API	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Plantago comp.	
Cerebellum	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Cerebellum from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cerebellum comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Cerebellum*	Bos taurus L.	Cerebellum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cerebellum comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Cerebrum	Bos taurus L.	Cerebrum from the calf		see app. 2.6: Arnica-Cerebrum	Arnica-Cerebrum	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cerebrum, regio motorica*	Bos taurus L.	Grey matter of the Gyrus praecentralis belonging to the Lobus frontalis of both hemispheres from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Cerebrum, regio motorica
Cervix uteri	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the neck of the uterus from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Circulus arteriosus cerebri*	Bos taurus L.	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Coccus cacti	Dactylopius coccus Costa	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.9 (HAB ethanol 90%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.	IVAA statement 2013
Cochlea*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Cochlea
Cod liver oil		see Iecoris aselli oleum				
Colon	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Colon from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Colon	
Colon	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Colon from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Colon sigmoideum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Colon sigmoideum, parts of the final tract of the Colon descendens from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Colon	Vademecum [mentioned under: Erysidoron® 1; Mercurius vivus naturalis]
Columna	Bos taurus L.	Parts of spinal cord from the calf		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Columna-Argentum p. 97
Columna anterior*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Columna posterior*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Conchae	Ostrea edulis L. Ph.fr. also: Crasostrea angulata Lamk., Crasostrea gigas Lamk.	The inner parts of the shells of the oyster	HAB; Ph.fr.	HAB-Monograph and Ph.Eur. 4.1.1., API (Apatit/Conchae)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Apatit/Conchae; Avena comp. ; Avena/Conchae comp.; Barium comp. ; Bryophyllum/Conchae ; Cerebellum comp. ; Conchae; Conchae comp.; Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Conchae/Quercus comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Hepar sulfuris; Hepar sulfuris comp.; Levisticum comp.; Onopordum/Primula comp.; Pankreas comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Sepia comp.; Thyreoidea comp.; Urtica comp.; Valeriana comp.	Vademecum: Conchae
Conjunctiva	Bos taurus L.	Conjunctiva from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Conjunctiva comp.	
Connective tissue		see Textus connectivus				
Cor	Bos taurus L.	Cor from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Arnica, Planta tota/Cor ; Aurum/Cor; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Cor; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Organum quadruplex	
Cor	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the epicardium, myocardium, endocardium and the arterial musculature of the heart from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Convallaria/Primula comp.; Cor; Cor/Crataegus comp.; Crataegus comp. ; Organum quadruplex	
Cor	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Cor from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Corallium	Several species of Coral of the genus Mussidae or Coralliideae or Trachyphyliideae	Fragmented parts obtained by communitung the fresh animal		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Corallium-Millefolium-Stibium Sirimim
Corallium rubrum	Corallium rubrum L.	Fragmented parts of the chalk skeleton from Corallium rubrum, containing at least 82 % $CaCO_3$ (Mr 100,1)	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1; see also app. 2.6 (Kalium aceticum comp.)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Corallium comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	
Cornea	Bos taurus L.	Cornea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Cornea/Levisticum comp.	
Cornu Caprae ibecis	Capra ibex L.	Horn from the ibex		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		IVAA statement 2013
Cornu Cervi	Cervus elaphus L.	Antlers from the deer		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Corpora quadrigemina*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Lamina tecti with the Corpora quadrigemina from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Corpus amygdaloideum*	Bos taurus L.	Brain matter of the region of the Corpus amygdaloideum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Corpus amygdaloideum
Corpus ciliare	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Corpus ciliare from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Corpus luteum	Bos taurus L.	Corpus luteum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Corpus luteum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Corpus luteum from the sow		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Melissa/Phosphorus comp.	
Corpus striatum*	Bos taurus L.	Corpus striatum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Corpus vitreum	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Corpus vitreum from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Corpus vitreum/Succinum	
Corpus vitreum*	Bos taurus L.	Corpus vitreum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 2.2.2; starting material for the production of Argentum-Corpus vitreum and Corpus vitreum-Stannum (see app. 2.6)	Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Corpus vitreum/Succinum	
Cortex cerebri	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Cortex of the cerebrum from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Crotalus horridus	Crotalus horridus L.	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus horridus L.	HAB	HAB Monograph		Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297
Crotalus terrificus	Crotalus durissus terrificus Laurenti	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus durissus terrificus Laurenti		acc. to monograph Lachesis HAB	Naja comp.	Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297 Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(1)32-39
Cutis (feti femini)	Bos taurus L.	The external skin of a ca. 5 months old female bovine foetus		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Cutis (feti)	Bos taurus L.	The external skin of a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Cutis (feti)	Sus scrofa domestica L.	The external skin from the foetus of the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Dactylopius coccus		see Coccus cacti				
Dens	Bos taurus L.	Teeth from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Diaphragma	Bos taurus L.	Muscular and tendinous parts of the diaphragm from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Diaphragma pelvis	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the muscle and fascies closing the pelvis, including connective tissue from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Diaphragma pelvis
Diencephalon*	Bos taurus L.	Diencephalon from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Disci intervertebrales	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Intervertebral discs of cervical spine from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales)	Bos taurus L.	Fibrocartilage of intervertebral discs of cervical spine from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales, thoracici et lumbales)	Bos taurus L.	Parts of intervertebral discs of cervical, thoracic and lumbar spine from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/ Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/ Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/ Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/ Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Disci intervertebrales (feti)	Bos taurus L.	Intervertebral discs of different regions of the spine from a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/ Solutio Siliceae comp.	Vademecum: Disci intervertebrales (feti)
Disci intervertebrales (lumbales)	Bos taurus L.	Intervertebral discs of lumbar spine from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Ductus choledochus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Ductus choledochus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Ductus thoracicus	Bos taurus L.	Ductus thoracicus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Borago/Renes comp.	
Duodenum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of duodenum from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Plexus gastricus]
Dura mater encephali*	Bos taurus L.	Dura mater encephali from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Endocardium	Bos taurus L.	Endocardium from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Endometrium	Bos taurus L.	Endometrium from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Endometrium comp.	
Epididymis	Bos taurus L.	Left epididymis from the bull		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Epiphysis	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Parts of the epiphysis from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis; Epiphysis comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Gnaphalium comp.	
Epiphysis*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the epiphysis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis; Epiphysis comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Gnaphalium comp.	
Erytrocytes	Equus przewalskii f. caballus POLIAKOV	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse		Ph.Eur. 2.2.4		IVAA statement 2013
Fasciculus atrioventricularis	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the conduction system of the heart, His´s bundle and Purkinje´s fiber from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Fasciculus atrioventricularis
Fasciculus opticus*	Bos taurus L.	Fasciculus opticus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Fel piscis	Salmo trutta L.	Bile from predatory fish, e.g. trout		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(3): 224
Fel tauri	Bos taurus L.	Fresh bile from gall bladder from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.	
Femur	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the diaphysis of os femoris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Femur
Folliculi lymphatici aggregati	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of Peyers patch of the small intestine from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Formica	Formica rufa L., Formica polyctena FÖRSTER	Live worker ants	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3 HAB monograph; dilutions Ph.Eur. 1.1.9; Ph.fr. monograph (ethanol 65%) Extraction with glycerol 85% to get an API with 2.4% formic acid. see also Acidum Formicae	Aconitum/Arnica comp./Formica; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Apis comp.; Arnica comp.; Arnica comp./Formica ; Arnica, Planta tota/Formica; Arnica/Formica comp. ; Arnica/Lappa comp. ; Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Belladonna/Betula/Formica ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Betula/Lappa comp. ; Bryonia/Formica comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Disci comp. cum Aesculo; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci comp. cum Auro; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum arvense/Formica; Formica; Formica D3/Formica D15; Formica/Oxalis; Formica/Prunus spinosa; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Mandragora comp.	Vademecum: Formica
Formica parva	Lasius niger	Live worker ants		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Flores Tritici comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Funiculus umbilicalis	Bos taurus L.	Funiculus umbilicalis from a bovine foetus between the third and ninth month of pregnancy		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp. ; Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Magnesit/Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Galea aponeurotica	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Gingiva	Bos taurus L.	Gingiva from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Calendula/Echinacea comp. ; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Gingiva	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Gingiva from the foetus of the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Glandula lacrimalis	Bos taurus L.	Glandula lacrimalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Glandula lacrimalis

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Glandula parotis	Bos taurus L.	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenales	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Suprarenal gland from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Glandula suprarenalis	Bos taurus L.	Glandula suprarenalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. ; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Glandula suprarenalis; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Glandulae suprarenales comp.	
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	Bos taurus L.	Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex) from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	Bos taurus L.	Medulla glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis dextra	Bos taurus L.	Glandula suprarenalis dextra from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis dextra	
Glandula suprarenalis sinistra	Bos taurus L.	Glandula suprarenalis sinistra from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis sinistra; Glandula suprarenalis/ Mercurius	
Glandula Thymus		see Thymus (Glandula)				
Glandula thyreoidea	Bos taurus L.	Glandula thyreoidea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1, 2.1.1	Colchicum comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Glandula thyreoidea; Thyreoidea comp.	
Glandula thyreoidea	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Glandula thyreoidea from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Colchicum comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Glandula thyreoidea; Thyreoidea comp.	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	Bos taurus L.	Glandulae parathyreoideae from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Aurum/Parathyreoidea ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Pharmakolith comp.	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Glandulae parathyreoideae from the pig		APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur. 2.1.1))	Aurum/Parathyreoidea ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Pharmakolith comp.	
Glandulae suprarenales		see Glandula suprarenalis				
Globus oculi	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Eyeball of the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Globe oculaire
Gyrus cinguli*	Bos taurus L.	Gyrus cinguli from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Hepar	Bos taurus L.	Pars intermedia of the liver from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Hepar; Hepar-Magnesium; Hepar/Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/Stannum metallicum B; Organum quadruplex; Taraxacum Stanno cultum/Hepar Bovis	
Hepar	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Liver from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Carduus marianus/ Viscum Mali comp. ; Hepar/Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/Stannum metallicum B; Organum quadruplex	IVAA statement 2013
Hippocampus*	Bos taurus L.	Hippocampus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Hippocampus
Hirudo ex animale	Hirudo medicinalis L.	Leech immediately after sacrifice		Ph.Eur. 1.1.11, 2.2.3	Hirudo comp.; Vespa crabro comp.	
Hypophysis	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Hypophysis from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Hypophysis; Hypophysis comp.; Hypophysis/Stannum; Magnesit/ Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Skorodit comp.	
Hypophysis*	Bos taurus L.	Hypophysis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Hypophysis; Hypophysis comp.; Hypophysis/Stannum; Magnesit/ Mamma comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Skorodit comp.	
Hypothalamus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Hypothalamus from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Hypothalamus*	Bos taurus L.	Hypothalamus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1		Vademecum: Hypothalamus

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Iecoris aselli oleum	Gadus morhua L.	Purified fatty oil obtained from the fresh livers of wild cod, Gadus morhua L. and other species of Gadidae, solid substances being removed by cooling and filtering	Ph.Eur.	API	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. ; Berberis/Juniperus comp.	
Ileum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Ileum from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum [mentioned under: Nux vomica/Nicotiana comp.]
Iris	Bos taurus L.	Iris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Hypophysis comp.; Iris bovis comp.	
Jecoris oleum		see Iecoris aselli oleum				
Labyrinthus*	Bos taurus L.	Cochlea and labyrinth from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Lac caninum	Canis lupus familiaris L.	Fresh milk from female dog		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1		ABMA-Vademecum Ovaria-Mercurius p. 195
Lac vaccae	Bos taurus L.	Fresh cow's milk		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)		Vademecum
Lachesis	Lachesis melanocephala Solòrzano & Cerdas, Lachesis stenophrys Cope, Lachesis muta L.	Carefully dried poison from Lachesis melanocephala Solòrzano & Cerdas, Lachesis stenophrys Cope or Lachesis muta L.	HAB	Monograph HAB	Ignatia comp.; Lachesis; Lachesis comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.; Naja comp.	Vademecum: Lachesis Répertoire de méd. anthr.
Lamina quadrigemina	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Lamina quadrigemina from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	
Lamina quadrigemina*	Bos taurus L.	Lamina quadrigemina from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Lamina/Retina comp.	
Lapis cancri	Astacus astacus L.	The gastrolithes from the body cavity from Astacus astacus L. or other crayfish		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1; API, raw material for the production of compositions: Silex - Lapis Cancri solutus (app. 2.6)	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	Vademecum: Silex - Lapis Cancri solutus Liste HAS (10.2012)
Larynx	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the larynx from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Larynx comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Larynx	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Parts of the larynx from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Bronchi/Plantago comp.; Larynx comp.	
Lathrodectus	Lathrodectus mactans Koch	Live spider of Lathrodectus mactans Koch		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Cor-Arsenicum album p. 105
Lens cristallina	Bos taurus L.	Lens cristallina from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp.; Iris bovis comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Lens cristallina	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Lens cristallina from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Iris bovis comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno	
Lien	Bos taurus L.	Spleen from the calf		P.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.; Lien comp.; Lien/Plumbum	
Lien	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Spleen from the rabbbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Glandulae suprarenales comp.; Lien comp.; Lien/Plumbum	
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ligamentum longitudinale posterius*	Bos taurus L.	Ligamentum longitudinale dorsale from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Ligamentum longitudinale posterius
Ligamentum vocale	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the vocal cords included the mucous membrane of the larynx from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum [mentioned under: Larynx comp.]
Lingua	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Liquor cerebrospinalis	Bos taurus L.	Cerebrospinalal fluid from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Lobus frontalis*	Bos taurus L.	Frontal lobe of cerebrum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Lobus occipitalis*	Bos taurus L.	Occipital lobe of cerebrum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Lobus parietalis*	Bos taurus L.	Parietal lobe of the cerebrum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Lobus temporalis*	Bos taurus L.	Temporal lobe from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Mamma	Bos taurus L.	Glandular tissue from bovine udder		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Magnesit/Mamma comp.	
Mamma	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Mammae from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Magnesit/Mamma comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mamma (dextra)	Bos taurus L.	Glandular tissue from right part of bovine udder		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3, APC 3.3.1		Vademecum: Mamma ABMA-Vademecum: Mamma-Argentum Sirimim p. 169
Mamma (sinistra)	Bos taurus L.	Glandular tissue from left part of bovine udder		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3, APC 3.3.1		Vademecum: Mamma ABMA-Vademecum: Mamma-Argentum p. 169
Mandibula (feti)	Bos taurus L.	Mandible from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Mandibula (feti)	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Mandible of the foetus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Marmot fat		see Marmottae oleum				
Maxilla (feti)	Bos taurus L.	Maxilla from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Maxilla (feti)	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Maxilla from a foetus of the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Medulla oblongata	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Medulla oblongata from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Medulla oblongata*	Bos taurus L.	Medulla oblongata from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Medulla ossium (rubra)	Bos taurus L.	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Medulla ossium	
Medulla ossium (rubra)	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Medulla ossium	
Medulla spinalis	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	spinal cord from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	
Medulla spinalis tota*	Bos taurus L.	Medulla spinalis of different sections from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Medulla spinalis comp.	Vademecum: Medulla spinalis (tota)

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mel		Honey is produced by bees (Apis mellifera L.) from the nectar of plants or from secretions of living parts of plants which the bees collect, transform by combining with specific substances of their own, deposit, dehydrate, store and leave in the honey comb to ripen and mature.	Ph.Eur.	API, raw material for the production of several compositions (see app. 2.6).	Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aqua Maris comp.; Archangelica comp. ; Avena/Conchae comp.; Bronchialpastillen; Ferrum/Acidum cholalicum; Fragaria/Urtica; Fragaria/Urtica/Gentiana; Levisticum comp.; Lichenes comp.; Mel; Mercurialis/Mel; Solutio Sacchari comp.	
Membrana sinus frontalis	Bos taurus L.	Mucosa of Sinus frontalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Cina comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Membrana sinus maxillaris	Bos taurus L.	Mucosa of Sinus maxillaris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Membrana sinus paranasalis	Bos taurus L.	Mucosa of sinus paranasales from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Hepar sulfuris comp.	Vademecum
Membrana synovialis	Bos taurus L.	Inner layer of the joint capsule of different joints from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Salix/Rhus comp.]
Meniscus articularis	Bos taurus L.	Meniscus articularis of the knee from calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Meniscus genus	Bos taurus L.	Meniscus of the knee from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Mandragora comp.; Mandragora/Meniscus Genus	
Mephitis putorius	Mephitis mephitis Schreb.	Liquid secretion of anal glands from Mephitis mephitis Schreb.	HAB 34	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 90% acc. to HAB 34)	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp.	
Mesencephalon*	Bos taurus L.	Mesencephalon from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Mesenchym	Bos taurus L.	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal. Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchymal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thymus, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongious bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Lien comp.; Mesenchym; Vespa crabro comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Mesenchym	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal. Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchymal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thymus, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongious bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		Liste HAS (10.2012) Répertoire de méd. anthr.: T.R.E.
Mucosa buccalis	Bos taurus L.	Mucous membranes of the following internal parts of the calfs mouth: Arcus glossopalatinus, A. pharyngopalatinus, gingiva, lingina, palatum, uvula and tonsilla palatinae		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Cydonia-Silicea p. 117
Mucosa sinusalis	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Sinusal mucosa from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Muqueuse sinusale
Musculi	Bos taurus L.	The following muscles of the ox (age 1,5-4 years): Musculus deltoideus, M. supraspinatus, M. infraspinatus, M. biceps brachii, M. triceps brachii, M. soleus and M. glutei		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Musculi-Aurum p. 178
Musculi glutaei	Bos taurus L.	Gluteal muscles from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Musculus deltoideus-Komplex	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Musculus deltoideus-complex, Musculus supra spinam, Musculus infra spinam, Musculus deltoideus, Musculus biceps brachii and Musculus triceps brachii from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Musculus rectus abdominis	Bos taurus L.	Musculus rectus abdominis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Musculus rectus abdominis
Musculus soleus-Komplex	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Musculus soleus-Komplex, Musculus soleus, Musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, Musculus gastrocnemius from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Mygale	Several species of the Theraphrosidae family	Live spider		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Hepar-Plumbum p. 148
Mygale avicularis		see Aranea avicularis				

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Myocardium	Bos taurus L.	Myocardium from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Primula comp.	
Naja tripudians	Naja naja L.	Carefully dried poison from Naja naja L.	HAB	Monograph HAB	Naja comp.	Vademecum: Naja comp.
Nervi intercostales	Bos taurus L.	Intercostal nerves from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus abducens*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus abducens from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus accessorius	Bos taurus L.	Nervus accessorius from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus facialis*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus facialis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus femoralis	Bos taurus L.	Nervus femoralis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus glossopharyngeus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus glossopharyngeus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Glöckler
Nervus hypoglossus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus ischiadicus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus ischiadicus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Nervus ischiadicus	
Nervus ischiadicus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Nervus ischiadicus from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Nervus ischiadicus	
Nervus laryngeus recurrens	Bos taurus L.	Nervus laryngeus recurrens from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nervus laryngeus superior	Bos taurus L.	Nervus laryngeus superior from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nervus medianus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus medianus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus oculomotorius	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of the Nervus oculomotorius from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus oculomotorius*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus oculomotorius from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus ophtalmicus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus ophtalmicus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.	
Nervus ophtalmicus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of the Nervus ophtalmicus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Iris bovis comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Nervus opticus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Nervus opticus from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus opticus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of Nervus opticus from the pig		Ph.Eur. (2371) 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus opticus*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus opticus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Cornea/Levisticum comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Nervus opticus comp.	
Nervus parasympathicus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Nervus parasympathicus from the rabbit		APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur. 2.1.1))		
Nervus peronaeus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus peronaeus (fibularis) from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus phrenicus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus phrenicus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Nervus phrenicus
Nervus pudendus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus pudendus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus radialis	Bos taurus L.	Nervus radialis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus statoacusticus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Nervus statoacusticus from the rabbit		APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur. 2.1.1))	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Nervus statoacusticus*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus statoacusticus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Epiphysis comp.; Gnaphalium comp.	
Nervus tibialis	Bos taurus L.	Nervus tibialis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus trigeminus*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus trigeminus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Nervus trigeminus	Vademecum
Nervus trochlearis*	Bos taurus L.	Nervus trochlearis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Nervus ulnaris	Bos taurus L.	Nervus ulnaris from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Nervus vagus	Bos taurus L.	Nervus vagus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Nervus vagus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Nervus vagus from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Apis/Larynx comp.; Larynx comp.	
Nodi lymphatici	Bos taurus L.	Parts of lymph node tissue from different parts of the body from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nucleus ruber*	Bos taurus L.	Brain substance from the nucleus ruber from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Oesophagus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Oesophagus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Ossa	Aves variae, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L.	Cleaned and milled bones from birds, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L.		Raw material for the production of Cissus-Ossa (see app. 2.6)	Cissus-Ossa	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Ossicula auditus*	Bos taurus L.	Auditory bones from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Ovaria		see Ovarium				
Ovarium	Bos taurus L.	Ovary from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Argentum/Ovaria ; Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Echinacea/Parametrium comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Ovaria comp.; Ovarium; Ovarium comp.	
Ovarium	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Ovary from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Ovarium; Ovarium comp.	
Pancreas	Bos taurus L.	Pancreas from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	
Pancreas	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Pancreas from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/ Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/ Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Pancreas	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Pancreas from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Argentum/Pancreas ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Basilicum comp.; Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Equisetum/Pancreas; Ferrum sidereum/Pankreas; Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.; Pankreas; Pankreas comp.	
Papillae duodeni	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Parametrium	Bos taurus L.	Tissue from the broad ligament of the uterus from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Parametrium dextrum	Bos taurus L.	Tissue from the right broad ligament of the uterus from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pars fetalis (placenta)	Bos taurus L.	Allantochorion from the bovine foetus		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	
Pars pallida*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Patella	Bos taurus L.	Patella from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Penis	Bos taurus L.	Penis from the bull		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Pericardium	Bos taurus L.	Pericardium from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum
Periodontium	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the alveolar and dentals regions from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	Vademecum
Periodontium	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Parts of the alveolar and dental regions from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.	
Periosteum	Bos taurus L.	Periosteum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Periosteum	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Periosteum from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Peritonaeum	Bos taurus L.	Peritonaeum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Bryonia/Viscum comp.	
Peritonaeum	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Peritonaeum from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Bryonia/Viscum comp.	
Pharynx	Bos taurus L.	Parts from the Pharynx digestorium and Pharynx respiratorius from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Pharynx
Physeter catodon		see Ambra grisea				
Physeter macrocephalus		see Ambra grisea				

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Pia mater encephali*	Bos taurus L.	Pia mater encephali from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Placenta	Bos taurus L.	Placentomas from the pregnant cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Berberis/Sepia comp.; Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. ; Echinacea/Viscum comp.; Placenta/Tropaeolum	Glöckler
Pleura	Bos taurus L.	Pleura parietalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus brachialis	Bos taurus L.	Plexus brachialis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.]
Plexus cardiacus	Bos taurus L.	Plexus cardiacus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus cardiacus
Plexus coeliacus	Bos taurus L.	Plexus coeliacus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus coeliacus
Plexus gastricus	Bos taurus L.	Plexus gastricus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus gastricus
Plexus haemorrhoidalis	Bos taurus L.	Venous network in the region of the rectum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus haemorrhoidalis
Plexus lumbalis	Bos taurus L.	Plexus lumbalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Plexus pelvinus	Bos taurus L.	Plexus pelvinus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)	Bos taurus L.	Plexus pulmonalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)
Plexus rectalis		see Plexus haemorrhoidalis				IVAA statement 2013
Plexus sacralis	Bos taurus L.	Plexus sacralis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pons*	Bos taurus L.	Pons from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Propolis	Apis mellifera L.	Propolis	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.10 (ethanol 90%)		Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 338
Prostata	Bos taurus L.	Prostata from the bull		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Berberis/Prostata comp.	
Pudendum feminium	Bos taurus L.	Labia vulvae, clitoris and glandula vestibularis major from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Pulmo	Bos taurus L.	Lung tissue from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Ferrum/Pulmo; Mercurius/ Pulmo; Organum quadruplex; Pulmo/ Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.	
Pulmo	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Lung from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Calcium carbonicum/Mesenchym comp.; Ferrum/Pulmo; Mercurius/ Pulmo; Organum quadruplex; Pulmo/ Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.	
Pulpa dentis	Bos taurus L.	Pulpa dentis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Pulpa dentis
Pylorus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Pylorus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Rectum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Rectum from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Regio substantiae nigrae*	Bos taurus L.	Tissue from the substantia nigra from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum: Regio substantiae nigrae
Renes	Bos taurus L.	Kidney from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Borago/ Renes comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Cuprum/Renes; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Lien comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Organum quadruplex; Ren	
Renes	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Kidney from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Borago/ Renes comp. ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis; Cuprum/Renes; Equisetum/Renes comp.; Lien comp.; Nicotiana/Nux vomica comp.; Organum quadruplex; Ren	
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	Bos taurus L.	Parts of tissue from the pelvis renalis and medulla renalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Reticuloendothelial System	Bos taurus L.	Parts from the thymus gland, lymh nodes, bone marrow, liver and spleen from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum [mentioned under: Levico comp.]

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Retina (et Chorioidea)	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Parts of the retina and the chorioidea from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Retina; Retina comp.; Retina/Secale comp.	
Retina et Chorioidea*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the retina and the chorioidea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Chrysolith comp.; Galenit/Retina comp.; Hypophysis comp.; Lamina/Retina comp. ; Nervus opticus comp.; Resina Laricis/Retina; Retina; Retina comp.; Retina/Secale comp.	
Sclera*	Bos taurus L.	Sclera from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Scolopendra	Several species of Scolopendra family	Living centipede of Scolopendrideae family		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum Sinus facialis-Mercurius p. 238
Sepia officinalis	Sepia officinalis L.	Dried ink bag from Sepia officinalis L.	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (Ethanol 65% V/V); see also App. 2.7: Sepia Gruneris		Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51
Sepia officinalis e volumine bursae rec.	Sepia officinalis L.	Fresh secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Melissa/Sepia comp.	Vademecum: Sepia Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex*	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-Komplex; sinus cavernosus, nervus opticus, nervus oculomotorius, nervus trochlearis, nervus trigeminus and nervus abducens from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Spongia tosta	Euspongia officinalis L.	Toasted Euspongia officinalis L.	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 1.1.9, (ethanol 70%), 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 4.1.1 (and then 3.2.2), API	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Bryonia/Spongia comp.; Colchicum comp.; Colchicum/Spongia comp.; Spongia; Spongia comp.	Vademecum: Spongia
Stomachus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Stomach from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Cichorium comp.	
Stomachus		see Ventriculus from the pig				
Sympathicus		see Truncus sympathicus				
Tendo	Bos taurus L.	Tendo from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Articulatio talocruralis comp.	
Tendo	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Tendo from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Testa ovi	Gallus gallus domesticus L.	Shell of hen's eggs		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Spongia comp.	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Testes	Bos taurus L.	Testes from the bull		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Argentum/Testes ; Testes comp.	
Textus connectivus	Bos taurus L.	Subcutaneous and intermuscular connective tissue, fascia, ligaments, tendons, as well as mesenterium from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2	Borago/Renes comp.	
Thalamus*	Bos taurus L.	Thalamus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Arnica/Hypophysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Hypophysis comp. ; Hypophysis comp.	
Thrombocytes	Equus przewalskii f. caballus POLIAKOV	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse		Ph.Eur. 2.2.4		Vademecum: Thrombocyten
Thymus (Glandula)	Bos taurus L.	Thymus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Glandula Thymus	
Thymus (Glandula)	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Thymus from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Glandula Thymus	
Tonsilla pharyngea	Bos taurus L.	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Tonsillae palatinae	Bos taurus L.	Tonsilla palatinae from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Calendula/Echinacea comp.	
Trabeculum*	Bos taurus L.	Trabeculum from the calf		Raw material for the production of Trabeculum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Trabeculum comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Trachea	Bos taurus L.	Trachea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		IVAA statement 2013
Tractus digestivus	Bos taurus L.	Equal parts of the complete digestive system from the calf		APC 3.3.1		ABMA-Vademecum: Tractus digestivus-Cuprum p. 257
Trigonum vesicae et Musculus sphincter	Bos taurus L.	Tissue of the vesica from the region of the trigonum vesicae and muscular tissue from the sphincter of the vesica from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Truncus cerebri	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Brain stem from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Apis regina comp.; Hirnstamm/ Triticum	
Truncus cerebri*	Bos taurus L.	Parts from Hypothalamus, Thalamus, Corpora quadrigemina, Pons, Medulla oblongata and Cerebellum from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1	Apis regina comp.; Hirnstamm/ Triticum	
Truncus coeliacus	Bos taurus L.	Arteria coeliaca (truncus coeliacus) from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Truncus sympathicus	Bos taurus L.	Truncus sympathicus from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.1		Vademecum: Sympathicus

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Truncus sympathicus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Truncus sympathicus from the rabbit		APC 3.3.3 (glycerol macerate 1:1000 (as Ph.Eur. 2.1.1))		Vademecum: Sympathicus
Tuba auditiva*	Bos taurus L.	Tuba auditiva from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.2		Vademecum: Tuba auditiva
Tuba uterina	Bos taurus L.	Tuba uterina from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.2	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Tuba uterina	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Tuba uterina from the (female) rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Echinacea/Parametrium comp.	
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Tunica mucosa nasi	Bos taurus L.	Tunica mucosa nasi from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1	Bronchi/Plantago comp.	Vademecum
Tunica mucosa recti	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		IVAA statement 2013
Tunica mucosa ventriculi	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Mucosa from the different regions of the stomach from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.2.1		Vademecum
Ureter	Bos taurus L.	Ureter from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Urethra feminina	Bos taurus L.	Urethra from the female calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Urethra masculina	Bos taurus L.	Urethra from the male calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Uterus	Bos taurus L.	Uterus from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryophyllum comp.	
Uterus	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Uterus from the (female) rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Berberis/Uterus comp. ; Bryophyllum comp.	
Uvea*	Bos taurus L.	Uvea from the calf		Raw material for the production of Uvea comp. (see app. 2.6)		Liste HAS (10.2010: Uvea comp.)
Vagina	Bos taurus L.	Vagina from the cow		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vaginae synoviales tendinum	Bos taurus L.	Tendon sheaths from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Allium cepa/Tendo comp.	Vademecum
Vaginae synovialis tendinum	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Tendon sheaths from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Allium cepa/Tendo comp.	
Valva trunci pulmonalis	Bos taurus L.	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Valvula aortae	Bos taurus L.	Valva aortae from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Valvula mitralis	Bos taurus L.	Valva mitralis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Valvula tricuspidalis	Bos taurus L.	Valva tricuspidalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena cava	Bos taurus L.	Parts of the Vena cava cranialis and Vena cava caudalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vena cava	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Parts of the vena cava from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1		
Vena femoralis	Bos taurus L.	Vena femoralis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena portae	Bos taurus L.	Vena portae from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vena saphena magna	Bos taurus L.	Vena saphena magna from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		Vademecum: Vena saphena magna
Ventriculus	Sus scrofa domestica L.	Ventriculus from the pig		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1, 2.2.3		Vademecum: Ventriculus
Vertebra cervicalis*	Bos taurus L.	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra coccygea	Bos taurus L.	Vertebra coccygea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra lumbalis*	Bos taurus L.	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3		IVAA statement 2013
Vesica fellea	Bos taurus L.	Vesica fellea from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Ferrum/Vesica fellea	
Vesica urinaria	Bos taurus L.	Vesica urinaria from the calf		Ph.Eur. 2.2.3	Cantharis comp.	Vademecum
Vesica urinaria	Oryctolagus cuniculus L.	Vesica urinaria from the rabbit		Ph.Eur. 2.1.1	Cantharis comp.	
Vespa crabro	Vespa crabro L.	Live hornets	HAB	Monograph, Dilutions acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.9; Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 2.1.1, 2.2.3	Argentum comp.; Arnica, Planta tota/ Vespa Crabro ; Colchicum comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Vespa crabro; Vespa crabro comp.	Vademecum: Vespa crabro
Vespa vulgaris	Vespula germanica Fabricius, Vespula vulgaris L. and/or Dolichovespula saxonia Fabricius	Live worker wasps		Ph.Eur. 1.1.11 (ethanol 65%), 2.1.1	Flores Tritici comp.	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Vipera berus	Vipera berus L.	Freeze dried venom of Vipera berus L.		acc. to HAB monograph Lachesis	Naja comp.	

APPENDIX 2.4

Starting materials that can be described chemically

Additional Information, see p. 16

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Acidum arsenicosum	see Arsenii trioxidum aph				
Acidum citricum	Acidum citricum	Citric acid	Ph.Eur.	excipient		
Acidum citricum monohydricum	Acidum citricum monohydricum	Citric acid monohydrate	Ph.Eur.	as raw material for the preparation for citrates of Fe and Ba	Berberis/Silicea comp.	
	Acidum Formicae	see Appendix 2.3				
	Acidum hexachloroplatinicum	Hexachloroplatinic acid	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp.	
Acidum hydrochloridum dilutum	Acidum hydrochloricum	Hydrochloric acid, dilute (10%)	Ph.Eur.	see monograph HAB (D2 with water, D3 with ethanol 50%); excipient	Acidum hydrochloricum comp.	
Acidum lacticum	Acidum lacticum	Lactic acid	Ph.Eur.	API	Majorana/Thuja comp.	
Acidum nitricum	Acidum nitricum Nitricum acidum pph	Nitric acid	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see monograph HAB), 3.1.2, API & excipient	Mixtura Stanni comp.	
Acidum phosphoricum dilutum	Acidum phosphoricum	Phosphoric acid, dilute (10%)	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 3.1.2	Acidum phosphoricum; Apis regina/ Aurum comp.	
Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Acidum phosphoricum concentratum Phosphoricum acidum pph	Phosphoric acid, concentrated	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Apis regina/Aurum comp.	
Acidum silicicum	Acidum silicicum	Precipitated silicon dioxide	DAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API, raw material for production		
Acidum sulfuricum	Acidum sulfuricum Sulfuricum acidum pph	Sulfuric acid (95-100.5% H_2SO_4)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see monograph HAB), raw material for the production of starting materials		
Acidum tartaricum	Acidum tartaricum	Tartaric acid	Ph.Eur.	raw material for the preparation of Solutio Ferri comp. (app. 2.6)	Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.	
	Aesculinum	Aesculin	DAB; HAB	Liquid dilution see Aesculinum HAB (Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90%), Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Echinacea/Prunus comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Aethiops antimonialis	see Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulfuratum			Aethiops antimonialis	
Alumen	Alumen	Alum	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see monograph HAB), 3.1.1 (D1 with water, from D2 with ethanol 30%), 4.1.1, API	Alumen/Helleborus comp. ; Mixtura Stanni comp.	
	Alumen chromicum	Potassium chromium(III) sulfate dodecahydrate		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Alumen chromicum
Aluminium-kalium-sulfuricum	Aluminium-kalium-sulfuricum	see Alumen	Ph.Eur.			
Ammoniae solutio concentrata		Ammonia solution, concentrated 25-30% NH_3	Ph.Eur.	raw material for the production of starting materials		
	Ammonium carbonicum	Mixture of ammonium hydrogen carbonate and ammonium carbamate of varying proportions	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)	Echinacea comp.	
	Antimonium tartaricum	see Kalium stibyltartaricum				
Argenti carbonas	Argentum carbonicum	Silver carbonate, 99-100.5% Ag_2CO_3		see Appendix 2.6, e.g. Viscum Mali cum Argento	Viscum album c. Arg	
Argenti nitras	Argentum nitricum Argentum nitricum pph	Silver nitrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (water) see Argentum nitricum HAB; raw material for preparation of Argentum-Corpus vitreum (see app, 2.6) and an excipient (preservative)	Antimonit/Rosae aetheroleum comp.; Archangelica/Pyrit comp.; Argentum nitricum ; Argentum nitricum comp. ; Argentum nitricum/Renes ; Calendula/ Echinacea comp. ; Ceratum Ratanhiae comp.; Myristica sebifera comp.; Periodontium/Silicea comp.; Phytolacca comp.; Ratanhia comp.; Robinia comp. ; Salvia comp.; Silicea comp.	
Argentum colloidale	Argentum colloidale	Colloidal silver, a silver preparation with a protective colloid coating of soluble protein	HAB	see monograph HAB	Argentum/Urtica comp. ; Majorana/ Thuja comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Argentum metallicum Argentum metallicum aph	Metallic silver 99.0-100.5% Ag	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, Ph.fr. (see monograph)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Argentum comp.; Argentum metallicum ; Argentum-Corpus vitreum ; Argentum/Berberis comp.; Argentum/Echinacea; Argentum/ Hyoscyamus ; Argentum/Ovaria ; Argentum/Pancreas ; Argentum/Quarz ; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Argentum/Rohrzucker ; Argentum/ Secale ; Argentum/Stibium ; Argentum/Testes ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Bryophyllum comp. ; Cartilago/Mandragora comp.; Chamomilla comp.; Conchae comp.; Conjunctiva comp.; Disci comp. cum Argento; Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Argento; Echinacea/Mercurius comp.; Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Echinacea/ Viscum comp.; Endometrium comp.; Ovaria comp.; Rosmarinus comp.; Testes comp. ; Thuja comp.	
Arsenii trioxidum	Arsenicum album aph	Arsenicum album fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, solution acc. to monograph HAB	Arsenicum album ; Bolus alba comp.; Bryonia/Gelsemium comp. ; Colchicum comp.	
	Aurum chloratum	Hydrogen tetrachloroaurate(III) trihydrate	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Apis regina/Aurum comp.	
	Aurum chloratum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum				

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Aurum metallicum Aurum metallicum aph	Metallic gold	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Arnica, Planta tota/Aurum ; Aurum comp. ; Aurum metallicum; Aurum/ Belladonna comp.; Aurum/Cor; Aurum/Crataegus; Aurum/Epiphysis comp. ; Aurum/Equisetum ; Aurum/ Ferrum sidereum ; Aurum/ Hyoscyamus comp. ; Aurum/ Hypophysis comp. ; Aurum/ Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa ; Aurum/Onopordon comp. ; Aurum/ Parathyreoidea ; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Aurum/Prunus ; Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Aurum/Stibium; Aurum/Strophanthus kombe ; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Berberis/Sepia comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Crataegus comp. ; Disci comp. cum Auro; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Medulla spinalis comp.; Pankreas comp.; Sarothamnus comp.; Stannum comp.; Strophanthus comp.	
	Aurum metallicum foliatum	Gold leaf		Raw material for the preparation of Myrrha comp. (see app. 2.6)		
	Aurum muriaticum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum				
	Aurum naturale	see Appendix 2.1				
	Aurum sulfuratum	Mixture of gold(I)- and gold(III) sulfide		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (then 3.1.1 or 3.1.2), 4.1.2		
	Barium citricum	Barium citrate with different amounts of crystal water: $Ba_3(C_6H_5O_7)_2$*n H_2O (n = 5-7)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barium citricum; Barium comp. ; Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Vespa crabro comp.	
Barii iodidum	Barium iodatum	Barium iodide monohydrate	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Barium jodatum ; Echinacea comp.	
	Bismuthum pph	see Bismutum subnitras ponderosus				
	Bismutum metallicum	Metallic bismuth	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Bismutum/Stibium; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Bismuthi subnitras ponderosus	Bismutum subnitricum Bismuthum pph	Bismuth subnitrate, heavy	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, API	Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Carbo Sanguinis comp. ; Pulvis Stomachicus cum Belladonna	
Borax	Natrium tetraboracicum Borax pph	Disodium tetraborate decahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2, excipient		
	Calcarea formicica	Calcium formate, obtained from Conchae and Acidum Formicae (see Appendix 2.3)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Vitis comp.	
	Calcarea phosphorica pph	Mixture of calcium phosphates	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Calcarea phosphorica
Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihydricus	Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihydricus	Calcium hydrogen phosphate dihydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Calcii hydroxidum	Calcii hydroxidum	Calcium hydroxide	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Causticum Hahnemanni		
Calcii lactas	Calcii lactas	Calcium lactate pentahydrate	Ph.Eur.	API	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
Calcii oxidum	Calcii oxidum	Freshly burnt lime or marble		raw material for the preparation of Calcium silicicum comp. (see app. 2.6)		
	Calcium stibiato-sulfuratum	A mixture, prepared by melting stibium sulfuratum nigrum, sulfur and conchae together	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
d-Camphora	Camphora Camphora pph	D-Camphor	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 70%), 3.1.2, HAB 12i, API	Aconitum/Camphora comp.; Aesculus/Cera comp.; Aurum/Valeriana comp.; Berberis/Juniperus comp. ; Camphora ; Camphora/Hypericum ; Oleum camphoratum comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Oleum rhinale; Plantago comp.; Sal Maris comp.; Sarothamnus comp.; Skorodit comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Causticum Hahnemanni	Causticum Hahnemanni	A substance, prepared according to the monograph Causticum Hahnemanni HAB	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (see mon. HAB)		
	Cerussa	see Plumbum carbonicum				
Chlorophyllum	Chlorophyllum	The green plant pigment (green of leaves).		API	Argentum/Quercus comp.	
	Cinnabaris	see Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum or Cinnabar in Appendix 2.1				
	Cobaltum metallicum	Metallic cobalt	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cobaltum metallicum	
	Copper tetrammine sulfate monohydrate	Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate Prepared from copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate and concentrated ammonia solution.		Raw material for the preparation of Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenaes (see app. 2.6)	Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	
	Creosotum	see Kreosotum				
Cupri acetas monohydricus aph	Cuprum aceticum	Copper(II) acetate monohydrate	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (solution according to monograph HAB, ethanol 50%), 3.1.2, 4.1.1	Borago/Renes comp. ; Cuprum aceticum; Cuprum aceticum comp.; Cuprum aceticum/Zincum valerianicum; Echinacea/Viscum comp.	
Cupri sulfas pentahydricus	Cuprum sulfuricum	Copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with water, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cina comp.; Cinis Capsellae comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum ; Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Cuprum sulfuricum/Eucalyptus; Trabeculum comp.; Veratrum comp.	
	Cupro-Stibium	Alloy of 1 part of copper and 1 part of antimony		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Cuprum citricum	Copper(II) citrate 2,5 hydrate		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprum citricum	
Cuprum aph	Cuprum metallicum aph	Cuprum metallicum fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Arnica comp./Cuprum ; Cuprum metallicum; Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis dextra; Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis sinistra; Cuprum/Nicotiana; Cuprum/Quarz comp.; Cuprum/Renes; Cuprum/Stibium; Eucalypti aetheroleum comp.; Mixtura Stanni comp.	
	Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum	Copper(I) oxide		API	Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum; Cuprum/Nicotiana	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus	Natrium phosphoricum	Disodium phosphate dodecahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Robinia comp.	
Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus	Ferrum sulfuricum	Dried ferrous sulfate with limit values for Mn (0.5 %) and Zn (150 ppm) different from those for Ferrous sulfate, dried Ph.Eur.		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2, starting material for the preparation of Ferrum/Quarz (see app. 2.6), API	Ferrum/Quarz ; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Ovarium comp.	
Ferrosi sulfas heptahydricus		Ferrous sulfate heptahydrate with limit values for Mn (0.5 %) and Zn (150 ppm) different from those for Ferrous sulfate heptahydrate Ph.Eur.		API for the preparation of Ferrum-Quarz (app. 2.6)	Cinis Capsellae comp.; Ferrum/Quarz	
Ferrum aph	Ferrum metallicum	Iron fhp (obtained by reduction or sublimation)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1; 4.1.2, starting material for preparation of Ferrum pomatum (see app. 2.6)	Chelidonium/Oxalis comp.; Ferrum metallicum; Ferrum praeparatum comp.; Ferrum/Anisum; Ferrum/Pulmo; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Ferrum/Thyreoidea; Ferrum/Vesica fellea	Der Merkurstab 2014; 67(4)270-282
	Ferrum citricum	Iron(III) citrate, containing not less than 18.0 and not more than 20.0 % of Fe (Ar 55.85)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)		
	Ferrum hydroxydatum	see Appendix 2.6 (Ferrum hydroxydatum)				
	Ferrum metallicum reductum	Iron obtained by reduction of the mineral siderite	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Ferrum hydroxydatum (app. 2.6)		
	Ferrum phosphoricum pph Ferri phosphas pph	Hydrated iron(III) phosphate	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Ferrum phosphoricum; Ferrum phosphoricum comp.	
	Ferrum sesquichloratum solutum Ferrum sesquichloratum	Aqueous solution of iron(III) chloride hexahydrate with 9.8-10.3% Fe	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 and D2 acc. to mon HAB!)	Ferrum praeparatum comp.	
	Ferrum ustum	Complex Iron(II, III) oxide - obtained by glowing and forging metallic iron - containing not less than 71.0 and not more than 75.0 % of Fe (Ar 55.85)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Conchae/Ferrum ustum comp.; Ferrum silicicum comp.; Ferrum ustum comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum	Iron(III) potassium tartrate dehydrate (Ferric potassium tartrate)		starting material for preparation of Solutio Ferri comp. and Solutio Sacchari comp. (see app. 2.6)	Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.	
	Glonoinum	see Nitroglycerinum				
Hepar sulfuris	Hepar sulfuris	A substance, obtained through heating together to glowing a mixture of calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni and sulfur.	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Hepar sulfuris; Hepar sulfuris comp.; Lachesis comp.	
Hydrargyri sulfas		Mercury(II) sulfate, 99-100.5% $HgSO_4$		raw material for preparation of e.g. Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro (see app. 2.6)		
Hydrargyri dichloridum	Hydrargyrum bichloratum	Mercuric chloride	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Hydrargyrum bicyanatum	Mercury(II) cyanide	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Mercurius cyanatus	
	Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Mercury(II) iodide	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D3 with ethanol 90%), 4.1.1; 4.1.2, starting material for preparation of Trabeculum comp. (app. 2.6)	Trabeculum comp.	
	Hydrargyrum chloratum Mercurius dulcis pph	Mercury(I) chloride	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Lycopodium comp.; Mercurius dulcis	
	Hydrargyrum metallicum Mercurius vivus pph	Metallic mercury	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Hirudo comp.; Mercurius vivus; Mercurius/Pulmo	
	Hydrargyrum nitricum oxydulatum	Mercury(I) nitrate dihydrate	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; for the preparation of Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni		
Hydrargyri sulfidum aph	Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum, Hydrargyri disulfuratum rubrum aph, Cinnabaris pph	Red Mercury(II) sulfide	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1; API	Echinacea/Prunus comp.; Oleum rhinale	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Iodum	Jodum, Iodum pph	Iodine	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 90% acc. to mon. HAB); raw material for preparation of Sulfur iodatum	Jodum	
Kalii bichromas aph	Kalium bichromicum pph	Kalium bichromicum fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with water acc. to mon. HAB), 3.1.2	Kalium bichromicum; Myristica sebifera comp.	
Kalium carbonicum	Kalium carbonicum pph	Potassium carbonate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2; starting material for preparation of Kalium aceticum comp. and Solutio Ferri comp. (see app. 2.6)	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.; Kalium carbonicum; Kalium/Teucrium comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	
Kalii chloridum	Kalium chloratum, Kalium muriaticum pph	Potassium chloride	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (Ethanol 18% acc. to mon. HAB), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Kalium muriaticum
Kalii dihydrogenophosphas	Kalium phosphoricum, Kalium phosphoricum pph	Potassium dihydrogen phosphate	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Berberis/Hypericum comp. ; Juglans regia comp.; Kalium phosphoricum comp.; Lilium tigrinum comp.	
Kalii hydrogenotartras		Potassium hydrogen tartrate	Ph.Eur.	Raw material for the preparation of Tartarus stibiatus and Solutio ferri comp. (app. 2.6)		
Kalii iodidum	Kalium iodatum, Kalium iodatum pph	Potassium iodide	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Kalii nitras	Kalium nitricum, Kalium nitricum pph	Potassium nitrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 18% acc. to mon. HAB), 4.1.1; starting material for preparation of Silex - Lapis cancri solutus (app. 2.6), excipient		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Kalii sulfas	Kalium sulfuricum, Kalium sulfuricum pph	Potassium sulfate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D1 with water acc. to mon. HAB), starting material for preparation of Kalium sulfuricum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Kalium/Teucrium comp.	
	Kalium carbonicum e cinere Fagi	Potassium carbonate, prepared from the ash of beechwood (Fagus silvatica)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Agropyron comp.; Anagallis comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.	
Kalium stibyltartaricum	Kalium stibyltartaricum	Potassium di-μ-tartratobis[antimonate(III)] trihydrate, 98.0-103.0% $C_8H_4K_2O_{12}Sb_2$, $3H_2O$	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; liquid solutions acc. to mon. HAB or Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Phosphorus/Tartarus stibiatus; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus A; Pulmo/Tartarus stibiatus B; Pulmo/Vivianit comp.; Tartarus stibiatus; Tartarus stibiatus comp.	
Hepar sulfuris kalinum	Kalium sulfuratum	Crude potash, containing a mixture of mainly potassium trisulfide and potassium metabisulfite (dipotassium pyrosulfite)	DAB 6	API	Kalium sulfuratum	Vademecum: Kalium sulfuratum (ext.)
	Kalium-Eisen-Tartrat	see Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum				
	Kreosotum	Mixture of guajacole, creosole and cresolene obtained through distillation of tar from beech wood	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (with ethanol 90%, see monograph)	Kreosotum; Majorana/Thuja comp.	
	Liquor natrii silicici	see Natrii silicici, Liquor				
Lithii carbonas	Lithium carbonicum, Lithium carbonicum pph	Lithium carbonate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with water acc. to mon. HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Magnesii chloridum hexahydricus	Magnesium chloratum, Magnesia muriatica pph	Magnesium chloride hexahydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 50%), 4.1.1; raw material for the preparation of Hepar-Magnesium (app. 2.6)		
Magnesii hydrogenophosphas trihydricus aph	Magnesium phosphoricum, Magnesia phosphorica pph	Magnesium hydrogenphosphate trihydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; starting material for preparation of Cinis e fructibus Avenae cum Magnesio phosphoricum (1:1)(see app. 2.6)	Cor/Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Magnesii hydroxidum	Magnesium hydroxide	Ph.Eur.	Raw material for preparation of e.g. Hepar-Magnesium(see app. 2.6)	Hepar-Magnesium	
Magnesii sulfas heptahydricus	Magnesium sulfuricum, Magnesia sulfurica pph	Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Berberis/Prostata comp. ; Berberis/ Uterus comp. ; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.	
	Magnesium metallicum	Metallic magnesium	HAB	API		
	Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 20%	Aqueous solution of magnesium dihydrogen phosphate (20 %)		Ph.Eur. 3.1.1, 3.1.2	Cactus/Magnesium phosphoricum ; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum; Magnesium phosphoricum acidum/ Tabacum; Onopordon comp./ Magnesium phosphoricum acidum	
	Mercurius auratus	Gold-mercury alloy, containing at least 32.0 and not more than 35.0 % Au (Ar 196.97) and at least 65.0 and not more than 68.0 % Hg (Ar 200.59)		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Mercurius bijodatus	see Hydrargyrum biiodatum				
	Mercurius cyanatus	see Hydrargyrum bicyanatum				
	Mercurius dulcis	see Hydrargyrum chloratum				
	Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni	A mixture with 86.0-90.0% Hg	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Apis/Belladonna/Mercurius; Echinacea/Mercurius comp.; Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni	
	Mercurius sublimatus corrosivus	see Hydrargyrum bichloratum (Hydrargyrum dichloridum)				
	Mercurius vivus	see Hydrargyrum metallicum				
	Minium	Minium [Lead(II,IV) oxide]	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Minium	
Natrii carbonas decahydricus		Sodium carbonate decahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (water), 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of zincum isovalerianicum	Levisticum comp.	
Natrii carbonas monohydricus	Natrium carbonicum, Natrum carbonicum pph	Sodium carbonate monohydrate	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (water), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cerebellum comp. ; Fragaria/Urtica comp.	
Natrii chloridum	Natrium chloratum, Natrum muriaticum pph	Sodium chloride	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%), 4.1.1, 4.1.2		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
Liquor natrii silicici	Natrii silicici, Liquor	Aqueous solution of sodium polysilicate with 7.5 - 8.5% sodium oxide (Na_2O) and 25.5 - 28.5% silcicum dioxide (SiO_2)	DAB 6	Raw materiel for preparation of e.g. Uvea comp. (see app. 2.6)		
Natrii sulfas anhydricus	Natrium sulfuricum, Natrum sulfuricum pph	Sodium sulfate, anhydrous	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol 18% acc. to monograph HAB), 3.1.2, 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for preparing Kalium sulfuricum comp. (see app. 2.6)	Lycopodium comp.	
Natrum sulfuricum pph	Natrium tetrachloroauratum, Aurum chloratum natronatum pph	Aurum chloratum natronatum fhp	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (water, see monograph HAB), 4.1.1		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Aurum muriaticum natronatum
	Natrium phosphoricum	see Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus	HAB			
	Natrium tetraboracicum	see Borax	Ph.Eur.			
	Nitricum acidum pph	see Acidum nitricum				
Nitroglycerinum	Glonoinum, Glonoinum pph	Solution of glycerol trinitrate (1 %) in ethanol 96 %	HAB	HAB: The substance is identical with D2; further potencies with ethanol 50%	Glonoinum	
	Petroleum rectificatum, Petroleum pph	Petroleum spirit distilling between 180 and 220 °C obtained by rectification of crude oil (Petroleum rectificatum fhp)	(HAB); Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 90% according to monograph HAB), API	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp.; Oleum Petrae comp.; Petroleum	
	Phosphoricum acidum pph	see Acidum phosphoricum concentratum				
	Phosphorus	Yellow phosphorus	HAB	see Phosphorus HAB (D3 with anhydrous ethanol), API (e.g. 0.1% in oil)	Agaricus comp./Phosphorus; Apatit/ Phosphorus comp.; Avena comp. ; Bryonia/Eupatorium comp.; Bryonia/ Gelsemium comp. ; Equisetum comp.; Melissa/Phosphorus comp.; Meteoreisen/Phosphor/Quarz; Oleum Petrae comp.; Phosphorus; Phosphorus/Malva ; Phosphorus/ Sulfur ; Phosphorus/Tartarus stibiatus; Sambucus/Teucrium comp.; Valeriana comp.	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Phosphorus metallicus (niger)	Black metallic phosphorus		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Platinum chloratum	see Acidum hexachloroplatinicum				
	Platinum metallicum	Metallic platin	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 (D2), 4.1.2		Répertoire de méd. anthr.: Platina
Plumbi carbonas	Plumbum carbonicum	Basic lead(II) carbonate		Raw material for preparation of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC (see app. 2.6)	Cinis Capsellae comp.	
	Plumbum aceticum	Lead(II) acetate trihydrate	HAB	Liquid solution acc. to monograph HAB and Ph.Eur. 3.1.1; 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Plumbum aceticum/Mel comp.
	Plumbum jodatum	Lead(II) iodide		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API		
	Plumbum metallicum	Metallic lead	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for the preparation of Plumbum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Cuprum sulfuricum comp.; Epiphysis/ Plumbum; Lien comp.; Lobelia comp.; Onopordon comp./Plumbum ; Plumbum mellitum ; Plumbum metallicum; Plumbum/Stannum	
	Plumbum silicicum	Lead(II) meta silicate, obtained by smelting cerussite and quartz		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Plumbum silicicum	Vademecum
Saccharum	Saccharum Sacchari	Sucrose obtained from the stems of Saccharum officinarum L.	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 3.1.2, raw material for preparation of e.g. Plumbum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Anis-Pyrit ; Argentum/Quercus comp. ; Argentum/Rohrzucker ; Parathyreoidea comp.; Plumbum mellitum	
	Saccharum candidum	Crystals, which develop by solving and crystallizing sucrose		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Aurum/Pulsatilla/Spongia comp. ; Spongia comp.	
	Silicea	see Acidum silicicum				
	Silicea colloidalis	Colloidal silica, directly obtained in the manufacture of the finished product by reaction of adjusted amounts of aqueous solutions of sodium silicate and citric acid monohydrate.		API	Berberis/Eucalyptus/ Silicea comp. ; Berberis/Silicea comp. ; Rosae aetheroleum/Silicea colloidalis comp. ; Silicea colloidalis comp.	
Stannosi chloridum dihydricum		Stannous chloride dihydrate, tin(II)chloride	Ph.Eur.	Starting material for preparation of stannum hydroxydatum (see app. 2.6, Hepar-Stannum)		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Stannum hydroxydatum	Tin(II) hydroxide		Raw material for preparation of e.g. Hepar-Stannum (see app. 2.6)	Corpus vitreum-Stannum; Hepar-Stannum	
	Stannum metallicum	Metallic tin	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; raw material for preparation of Stannum mellitum (see app. 2.6)	Allium cepa/Tendo comp. ; Apatit/Stannum ; Articulatio talocruralis comp. ; Bryonia/Stannum ; Bryonia/Viscum comp.; Cartilago comp. ; Cina comp.; Conchae/Quercus comp.; Disci comp. cum Nicotiana; Disci comp. cum Pulsatilla; Disci comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Pulsatilla comp. cum Stanno; Disci/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Equisetum/Stannum ; Gnaphalium comp. ; Hepar/Stannum metallicum A; Hepar/Stannum metallicum B; Hypericum comp.; Hypophysis/Stannum; Juglans regia comp.; Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno; Lilium tigrinum comp.; Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp.; Meniscus Genus/Stannum ; Mercurius vivus comp.; Mixtura Stanni comp.; Periodontium/Stannum comp.; Plumbum/Stannum; Prunus/Rosmarinus comp.; Scilla comp.; Senecio comp.; Stannum comp.; Stannum metallicum ; Stannum/Succinum; Stannum/Symphytum comp.; Urtica comp.	
	Stibium arsenicosum	Mixture of equal parts of antimony(V)oxide and arsenic(III)oxide	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Stibium arsenicosum	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Stibium metallicum	Metallic antimony	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Argentum/Stibium ; Arnica/Echinacea comp. ; Aurum/Hyoscyamus comp. ; Aurum/Stibium; Bismutum/Stibium; Calendula/Mercurialis comp. ; Calendula/Stibium ; Cichorium comp.; Cichorium/Pancreas comp.; Cuprum/Stibium; Disci comp. cum Stibio; Hamamelis comp.; Marmor/Stibium; Medulla spinalis comp.; Mercurialis comp.; Mercurialis/Stibium comp.; Ovarium comp.; Rhus/Salix comp.; Stibium comp. ; Stibium metallicum; Strophanthus comp.; Tormentilla comp.; Veratrum comp.	
	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	Mixture of antimony(V) sulfide and sulfur	HAB	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	
	Sulfur ad usum externum	Sulfur for external use (99.0-101.0% S)	Ph.Eur.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API (for ointments)		
Sulfur aph	Sulfur	Sulfur obtained by sublimation	Ph.Eur.	Liquid solutions acc. to monograph HAB (D4); Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2; API; raw material for preparation of Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum (see app. 2.6)	Avena comp. ; Betula/Arnica comp. ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur ; Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum; Ferrum sidereum comp.; Ferrum/Sulfur comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Hepar sulfuris; Phosphorus/Sulfur ; Pulvis stomachicus cum Bismuto praeparato; Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.; Sulfur; Valeriana comp.	
Sulfur iodidum	Sulfur iodatum	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 70-80% I)	HAB	Liquid solutions acc. monograph HAB (D3); Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
Sulfur iodidum aph	Iode et soufre (mélange d') pph	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 75-82% I)	Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Sulfur selenosum	Mixture obtained by melting 1 part of selen with 99 parts of sulfur.		Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		Vademecum: Sulfur selenosum
	Sulfuricum acidum pph	see Acidum sulfuricum				

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name in Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to Standard	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph	Other
	Tartarus depuratus	Purified tartar, mainly consisting of potassium hydrogen tartrate (Cream of tartar)		Only used as a raw material for production of Tartarus stibiatus		
	Tartarus stibiatus	see Kalium stibyltartaricum				
	Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate	see Copper tetrammine sulfate monohydrate				
Zincum isovalerianicum	Zincum isovalerianicum, Zincum valerianicum	Zinc isovalerate dihydrate with 98-103% $Zn(C_5H_9O_2)$, $2H_2O$	HAB	Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (D2 with ethanol acc. to monograph HAB), 4.1.1, 4.1.2	Cuprum aceticum/Zincum valerianicum; Zincum valerianicum; Zincum valerianicum comp.	Vademecum
Zincum	Zincum metallicum Zincum metallicum pph	Metallic zinc with 97.0-100.5 (HAB) or 99.5-101.5% (Ph.fr.) Zn	HAB; Ph.fr.	Ph.Eur. 4.1.1, 4.1.2		
	Zincum valerianicum	see Zincum isovalerianicum				

APPENDIX 2.5

Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

Additional Information, see p. 16

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard (for the plant)	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum	
Atropa belladonna Cupro culta	Whole fresh plants of Atropa bella-donna L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		
Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento cultum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21	Bryophyllum Argento cultum	
Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio cultum	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21	Bryophyllum Mercurio cultum	Vademecum
Chamomilla recutita Cupro culta	Fresh underground parts of Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Ph.Eur. 1.2.9, HAB 21	Chamomilla Cupro culta, Radix	
Chelidonium majus Ferro cultum	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Chelidonium Ferro cultum	Vademecum: Chelidonium Ferro cultum
Cichorium intybus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21	Cichorium Plumbo cultum	
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21	Cichorium Stanno cultum	
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum, Radix	Fresh root of Cichorium intybus L. (var, intybus and/or var. sativum DC), collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Ph.Eur. 1.1.7	Cichorium Stanno cultum	
Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum	Fresh green sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.2 (using a diluted silicate containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.7, HAB 21 (see monograph!)	Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum	Vademecum
Hypericum perforatum Auro cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Aqua Maris comp.; Hypericum Auro cultum	
Kalanchoe pinnatum Argento culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento culta				

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard (for the plant)	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Kalanchoe pinnatum Mercurio culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio culta				
Melissa officinalis Cupro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Melissa Cupro culta	Vademecum
Nasturtium officinale Mercurio cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum	Vademecum: Nasturtium Mercurio cultum
Nicotiana tabacum Cupro culta	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	HAB 21	Tabacum Cupro cultum	Vademecum: Tabacum Cupro cultum
Oenothera Argento culta	Fresh aerial parts of Oenothera biennis L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB 1924)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3		Vademecum: Oenothera Argento culta Jachens: Dermatologie. Salumed Verlag 2012, pp 386-391.
Primula veris Auro culta	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Primula Auro culta ; Primula Auro culta comp.	Vademecum: Primula Auro culta
Taraxacum officinale Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Taraxacum Stanno cultum	Vademecum: Taraxacum Stanno cultum
Thuja occidentalis Argento culta	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.5, HAB 21	Thuja occidentalis Argento culta	
Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.3, HAB 21	Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Vademecum: Urtica dioica Ferro culta
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Cinis	see Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae (app. 2.7)				
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Radix	Fresh underground parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		HAB 21; for the preparation of Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae (app. 2.5)	Urtica dioica Ferro culta	

APPENDIX 2.6

List of compositions

Additional Information, see p. 16

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Alkali comp.	Commiphora Jacq. species (Myrrh) / Kalium carbonicum / Quarz / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Cichorium intybus, Planta tota, Alkali comp. is made from: Potassium carbonate / Trona / Quartz and Myrrh. Potassium carbonate, Trona and quartz are intensively triturated and mixed with an organic binder (Myrrh). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Alkali comp.
Anis-Pyrit	Pimpinella anisum L. / Pyrite / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	1 g Anis-Pyrit is prepared from: Pimpinella anisum, Fructus 0.33 g / pyrite 0.33 g / saccharum 0.33 g. Warmed pyrite powder and melted sucrose (cane sugar) are thoroughly mixed, the powdered aniseed added, with final thorough mixing. This formulation is diluted with an equal amount of lactose monohydrate, grinded and sieved. The resulting preparation is named Anis-Pyrit 50%. The potency Anis-Pyrit D1 is prepared from 2 Parts Anis-Pyrit 50% and 8 parts lactose monohydrate, D2 acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.	Anis-Pyrit	
Apis cum Levistico	Apis mellifica L. / Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	1 g Apis cum Levistico Ø (= D1) is prepared from 0.1 g Apis mellifica / 0.1 g aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug to extract = 4:1). The bees are killed, comminuted and mixed with a freshly prepared aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug to extract = 4:1) and glycerol 85%. The liquid is further processed immediately. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2 (and then HAB 11).	Apis cum Levistico	
Argentum-Corpus vitreum	Argentum metallicum / Corpus vitreum (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)	Fresh eye ball (Corpus vitreum) is cleaned and mixed with a solution prepared of silver nitrate, concentrated ammonia solution and purified water and mixed. After addition of a solution of glucose monohydrate in purified water the mixture is gently warmed so that the silver nitrate is reduced to the metal. After filtering, the residue is dried with lactose monohydrate, being adjusted to give a final silver content of 1%. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.2.2.	Argentum-Corpus vitreum	
Arnica-Cerebrum	Arnica montana L. / Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Truncus cerebri	1 g Arnica-Cerebrum D1 contains: Arnica, Planta tota, pressed juice 0.05 g/ Cerebrum 0.05 g (Cerebrum = Cerebrum, Cerebellum, brain stem = 2+1+1). The cleaned ingredients of Cerebrum are mixed with the fresh pressed plant juice of Arnica montana and intensively triturated. Water for injections is added and the mixture potentised to make the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2.	Arnica-Cerebrum	
Calcium Quercus		see Quercus e cortice cum Calcio carbonico		
Calcium silicicum comp.	Arnica montana L. / Calcii oxidum / Camphora / Kalii carbonas / Quarz / Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl. and Quercus pubescens Willd./ Triticum aestivum L. emend Fiori et Paol.	The mineral composition according to the model of Arnica montana, Radix, Calcium silicicum comp. is prepared from: Silicate melt (obtained from quartz / potassium carbonate / calcium oxide) / arnica latex / dried water-extract of Quercus, Cortex / camphor / essential oil from Arnica montana, Radix / fresh wheat gluten. The silicate melt is added to a mixture of the Arnica latex and dried extract of Quercus, Cortex and triturated. Finally the camphor and thereafter the essential oil of Arnica are added. The mixture is triturated well, fresh wheat gluten added and the whole kneaded to make a paste. This is then dried, powdered and diluted with lactose monohydrate. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.		Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Carbo Betulae cum Methano	Betula pendula Roth / Methan	Carbo Betulae (charcoal from the birch) saturated with methane R1 (Ph.Eur.) is used: Powdered Carbo Betulae is heated under vacuum. After heating and during cooling Carbo Betulae is saturated with methane. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Carbo Betulae cum Methano	
Chelidonium/ Curcuma praep.	Chelidonium majus L. / Curcuma xanthorrhiza Roxb.	Chelidonium Ø (Ph.Eur. 1.1.5) Curcuma xanthorrhiza, Rhizoma Ø (Ph.Eur. 1.2.12) with 70% ethanol V/V) are mixed by dropping 1 part of the first into 1 part of the rotating second mother tincture.	Chelidonium/Curcuma	
Cinis Capsellae comp. APC	Artemisia absinthium L. / Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Med. / Cupri sulfas pentahydricus / Ferrosi sulfas desiccates / Halite / Kalii carbonas/ Plantago lanceolata L. / Plumbum subcarbonicum (Creussa) / Rosa centifolia L. / Cremor Tartari (Cream of Tartar)	The dried plant material is incinerated. The water soluble ash salts obtained therefrom, potassium carbonate (obtained from cream of tartar) and halite are mixed and added to the powder-mixture of copper sulfate and ferrous sulfate. This combined powder is ground until the colour changes to reddish brown. In the next step wine vinegar, in which fresh rose petals have been soaked, is added and the mixture is heated and mixed while the colour turns to pistachio green. When the pasty mass gets more solid, cerussa is added and heating is continued until the mixture is solid and dry. After cooling the substance obtained is powdered. For external use (e.g. ointment, gel) an aqueous solution of the water soluble salts is used as active substance: 9 parts of purified water are added to 1 part of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC, the mixture is agitated in a closed container and allowed to stand at room temperature for at least 20 hours. The supernatant is filtered. The resulting Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% is clear and viridian green (turquoise blue to emerald green) in colour and has to be processed immediately. 1 part Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% corresponds to 0.1 parts of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC.		Vademecum: Cinis Capsellae comp.
Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1)	Avena sativa L. / Magnesium phosphoricum fhp	1. Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae (ash of the fruit of Avena sativa, oats): Oats are moistened with water to start germination, dried and ashed. 2. Ash of oats with magnesium phosphoricum: Equal parts of ash of oats and magnesium phosphoricum are mixed together. 3. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.	Arnica/Cactus comp.; Cor/ Crataegus comp.; Fragaria/Urtica comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum comp.; Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae; Veratrum comp.	Meyer, U. & Pedersen, P.A. (ed): Anthroposophische Pharmazie 2016 p. 587-590.
Cissus-Ossa	Aves variae, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L. (Ossae) / Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.	1 g Cissus-Ossa is prepared from: Ethanolic extract from: Cissus gongylodes, aerial root 1.5 g/ Ossa 0.5 g. The bones of partridge or pheasant are cleaned, boiled, dried, powdered and mixed with equal parts of lactose monohydrate. To this mixture add the mother tincture of Cissus gongylodes, aerial roots dried (Ph.Eur. Method 1.1.7). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Cissus-Ossa	Vademecum
Compositio Cichorii		See Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha		
Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha APC	Quarz / Kalii carbonas / Commiphora Jacob species (myrrh) / Acidum phosphoricum / Halite / Fructosum / Lactosum monohydricum	The mineral composition according to the model of Cichorium intybus, Planta tota, Compositio Cichorii, is prepared by melting quartz with potassium carbonate. After cooling, the product is dissolved in water and added to powdered myrrh, swollen by adding Spiritus vini and water. Then phosphoric acid is added, leading to precipitation of silicic acid. The mixture is dried, sieved and mixed with halite. A concentrated aqueous solution of caramel of fructose and then lactose monohydrate is added. After drying, the whole mixture is grinded to a uniform powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Vademecum

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo APC	Kalii carbonas / Quarz / Trona / Saccharum	The mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L.) Radix, Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo is prepared from: Potassium carbonate/ quartz/trona. Potassium carbonate and quartz are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, and simultaneously with a solution of sucrose added to a solution of potassium carbonate and trona. This mixture is immediately potentised with ethanol 15% to D1. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2012; 65(1): 46-53
Corpus vitreum-Stannum	Corpus vitreum / Stannum hydroxatum	1 g Corpus vitreum-Stannum D1 contains: Corpus vitreum 0.08 g / stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of tin (II) chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate in purified water. The resulting precipitate (stannum hydroxatum) is added to fresh, minced corpus vitreum and thoroughly mixed. The mixture is diluted in the proportion 1:10 with water for injections to prepare the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur. 2.1.1 and 3.1.2	Corpus vitreum-Stannum	
Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	Glandula suprarenalis / Renes (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) / Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate	1 g Cuprum-Ren (= D1) contains: Glandula suprarenalis 0.023 g / ren 0.060 g / tetrammine copper(II)sulfate 0.017 g. The fresh, cleaned animal ingredient is mixed with a small amount of water for injections and tetrammine copper (II) sulfate, and triturated together. Afterwards the rest of the water for injections is added to make the D1 potency, and the solution is potentised. The D1 potency is further processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	
Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum	Equisetum arvense L. / Sulfur	Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum is prepared from Equisetum arvense, Herba and sulfur. 99 parts Equisetum arvense, Herba (dried, herbal drug, comminuted to a particle size < 4 mm) are mixed with 1 part sulfur (particle size < 0,063 mm) and then toasted according to APC 4.1. Heating time: about 5 - 15 minutes. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum	
Equisetum hyemale-Rubellit	Equisetum hyemale, Rubellit	Fresh harvested shoots of Equisetum hyemale L. are put into a aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and under presence of day light. In the evening the shoots are taken out, comminuted and expressed. The expressed juice is mixed with an equal mass of ethanol 96%. Filter after 5 to 10 days. The filtrate is Equisetum hyemale-Rubellit Ø. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2013; 66(5): 415-438.
Equisetum limosum-Rubellit	Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) / Rubellit	Fresh harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) are put into a aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and under presence of day light. In the evening the shoots are taken out, comminuted and expressed. The expressed juice is mixed with an equal mass of ethanol 96%. Filter after 5 to 10 days. The filtrate is Equisetum limosum-Rubellit Ø. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.1		Soldner G, Stellmann HM. Individuelle Pädiatrie, 4. Auflage, Wissenschaftl. Verl. Ges., Stuttgart, 2011, p. 743
Ferrum hydroxydatum	Ferrum aph / Vitis vinifera L.	Ferrum hydroxydatum is prepared from Ferrum metallicum reductum and red wine vinegar. Iron that previously has been obtained from siderite by reduction is covered with red wine vinegar and lightly warmed for about 14 days. Then the solution is filtered, and the residue washed with water and left to react with air. This oxidation releases heat, wherefore the preparation has to be kept moist. The oxidised iron is reduced to powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Ferrum hydroxydatum	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Ferrum pomatum	Ferrum aph / Malus domestica Borkh.	1 g of the D1 contains: Fe 5 mg. Sour apples are pressed; 100 parts juice is mixed with 4 parts Ferrum metallicum. The mixture is left for several days and then warmed to about 50 °C. Afterwards the solution is filtered, evaporated to 55-65% of the weighed mass and mixed with ethanol 96% (standardisation on 10% ethanol and 0.5% Fe). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%).		
Ferrum rosatum	Ferrum sidereum / Rosa centifolia L.	Ferrum rosatum is prepared from Rosa centifolia and Ferrum sidereum D1. Fresh rose petals are triturated with 1% Ferrum sidereum D1 and the amount of water, calculated according to Ph.Eur. 1.1.6, and then allowed to stand for 2-4 days at 15-20 °C. Then the calculated amount of ethanol 94% is added and the preparation continued according to Ph.Eur. 1.1.6. The composition can be potentised acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.6.	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites; Tropaeolum comp.	
Ferrum-Quarz	Ferrosi sulfas heptahydricus APC/ Mel, Quarz / Vinum (Vitis vinifera L.)	A mixture of ferrous sulfate heptahydrate, honey, white wine, and calcinated quartz is prepared. This mixture is heated and dried under vacuum. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1 or 4.1.2	Ferrum/Quarz	
Helleborus foetidus	Helleborus foetidus L.	Aqueous extracts prepared from the fresh plant parts of Helleborus foetidus L. (Flos rec. and Folium et Radix rec., see app. 2.2) are mixed 1:1 according to APC 7.5.		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 565
Helleborus niger	Helleborus niger L.	Aqueous extracts prepared from the fresh plant parts of Helleborus niger L. (Flos rec. and Planta tota rec., see app. 2.2) are mixed 1:1, according to APC 7.5.		Der Merkurstab 6/2010 p. 500-566
Hepar-Magnesium	Hepar / Magnesium hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Magnesium D1 contains: Hepar 0.06 g / magnesium hydroxydatum 0.04 g. A solution of magnesium chloride in water is mixed with a solution of sodium hydroxide in water. The resulting precipitate (Magnesium hydroxydatum) is washed several times with water and than mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then together with honey, it is finely triturated. The mixture is mixed with water for injections (Ph.Eur. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph.Eur. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Hepar-Magnesium	
Hepar-Stannum	Hepar / Stannum hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Stannum contains: Hepar 0.08 g / Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of tin (II) chloride in water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate in water. The resulting precipitate (Stannum hydroxydatum) is washed with water. The resulting Stannum hydroxydatum is mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then thoroughly triturated with honey. The mixture is mixed with water for injections (Ph. Eur. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph. Eur. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Hepar-Stannum	
Kalium aceticum comp.	Antimonite / Corallium rubrum L. / Crocus sativus L. / Kalii carbonas / Acetum Vini destillatum (Vitis vinifera L.) / Spiritus e Vino (Vitis vinifera L.)	Kalium aceticum comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / distilled red wine vinegar / antimonite / Crocus sativus tincture 1:20 (vehicle: spiritus e vino) / spiritus e vino / Corallium rubrum. Potassium carbonate/distilled red wine vinegar / antimonite / Crocus sativus tincture/ Corallium rubrum and spiritus e vino are stepwise combined and repeatedly distilled. The resultant dried residue is used. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Anagallis/Malachit comp.; Chamomilla/Malachit comp.; Kalium aceticum comp.	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Kalium sulfuricum comp.	Kalii sulfas / Natrii sulfas / Linum usitatissimum L.	The mineral composition according to the model of Anagallis arvensis, Herba, Kalium sulfuricum comp. is prepared by mixing Kalii sulfas and Natrii sulfas and making a paste by grinding with mucilage of linseed. The mixture is dried, grinded, sieved; and finally diluted with lactose monohydrate. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Kalium sulfuricum comp.
Lapis Cancri-Flintstein	Lapis Cancri/ Flint / Spiritus e vino (Vitis vinifera L.)	1 g Lapis Cancri-Flintstein contains: Lapis Cancri 0.5 g/flint 0.5 g: Finely powdered Lapis Cancri and flint are thoroughly mixed with spirito e vino and the slurry treated with water. The resultant dry residue is the substance. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Lapis Cancri/Flintstein	
Mixtura Stanni comp.	Alumen / Cuprum metallicum / Stannum metallicum / Acidum nitricum (65 per centum);	1 g suspension is prepared from: 1 mg Alumen / 0.002 mg Cuprum metallicum / 2 mg Stannum metallicum 10.4 mg Acidum nitricum (65 per centum).	Mixtura Stanni comp.	Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 332-337
Myrrha comp.	Aurum metallicum / Boswellia species / Commiphora Jacq. Species / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	1 g Myrrha comp. D1 is prepared from: Myrrha 0.1 g / Aurum metallicum foliatum (gold leaf) 0.001 g and Olibanum 0.1g. Myrrha and gold leaf are bound together with the aid of moderate heat; incense smoke (from Olibanum) is passed through the mixture. This composition is stirred into molten sucrose (cane sugar). After cooling it is triturated for one hour by hand, resulting the potency D1. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Vademecum: Myrrha comp.
Onopordon comp.	Hyoscyamus niger L. / Onopordum acanthium L. / Primula veris L.	A combination of Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø and Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Onopordon comp.	
Onopordon comp. praeparatum CH	Onopordum acanthium L. / Hyoscyamus niger L. / Primula veris L.	0.1 part of Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) prepared with 2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø is diluted with 0.315 parts of purified water ("mixture a"). 0.1 part of Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) is diluted with 0.315 parts of purified water (mixture b). In a special equipment "mixture b" is dropped into the rotating "mixture a". 0.17 parts of Ethanol 96% are added to obtain 1 part of the final product	Onopordon comp.	
Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Onopordum acanthium L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Digestio prepared according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh flowerheads of Onopordum acanthium L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp.	
Peat moss extract composition I (light)	Solum uliginosum / Aesculus hippocastanum L. / Equisetum arvense L.	98 parts of peat moss extract in analogy to to HAB Method 12c (using purified water only), are mixed with each 1 part of Aesculus hippocastanum e semine according to HAB Method 12m and Equisetum arvense ex herba according to HAB Method 12c. The supernatant liquid is decanted and filtered after 10 - 12 weeks yielding at least 75% Peat moss extract composition I. API or Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.2	Solum uliginosum comp.	
Peat moss extract composition II (dark)	Solum uliginosum / Aesculus hippocastanum L. / Equisetum arvense L.	The rest left from the decanting for preparing Peat moss extract composition I, (max. 25%) is Peat moss extract composition II	Solum uliginosum comp.	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Plantago lanceolata L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Digestio prepared according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.04 to 0.08 parts (corresponding to 1 to 2%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Plantago-Primula cum Hyoscyamo	
Plumbum mellitum	Plumbum metallicum / Mel / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	Plumbum mellitum is prepared from lead, honey and cane sugar. Depressions are introduced into a sheet of lead, this is filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten lead. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled this time with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten lead from the first lead-honey-sheet. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Arnica/Betula comp. ; Arnica/ Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Hypophysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Arnica/Plumbum mellitum; Aurum/Plumbum mellitum comp. ; Nicotiana/Strophantus comp.; Plumbum mellitum	
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1: 12.35) with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Primula veris L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Prepared by digestion according to APC 3.8.1 from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 12.35 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration and the addition of 0.08 parts (corresponding to 0.6%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).		
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Primula veris L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	A digestio prepared according to APC 3.8.2 from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (prepared acc. to Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp.	
Prunuseisen	Prunus spinosa L. / Ferrum metallicum	Prepared according to HAB method 37a	Levico comp.; Prunus spinosa cum Ferro	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Quercus e cortice cum Calcio carbonico	Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl., Quercus pubescens Willd.	1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus: oak bark is incinerated. The ash is suspended 1 part in 10 parts of purified water. Carbon dioxide is induced for 5 to 10 minutes and then warmed until bubbling starts (75-85 °C). This temperature is kept until bubbling ends. The cooled suspension is filtered and the residue dried = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus. 2. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum: 0.1 part of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus is mixed with 6100 parts of purified water or water for Injections and boiled for 5 minutes. The cooled solution is filtered (for solutions for injection it is decanted and filtered). The result is a saturated aqueous solution of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum. 2.1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum: syrup prepared with sucrose and Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (64:36). 3. Quercus robur/petraea e cortice cum Calcio carbonico solution = D5: A decoction of oak bark according to Ph.Eur. 1.4.3 (Ø=D1) is potentised to D5 with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum as a vehicle. Appendix: according to the dosage form to be produced either potentise further with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (e.g. solution for injection) or with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum (Globuli velati).	Calcium carbonicum cum Quercu ; Calcium carbonicum/ Mesenchym comp.	
Roseneisen	Rosa L., suitable species of the genus/ Ferrum metallicum	Prepared according HAB method 37a	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites	
Rubellit comp.	Equisetum limosum (Equisetum fluviatile L.), Rubellit, Mel	Fresh harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) are put into an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and in the presence of day light. In the evening the shoots are taken out, comminuted and expressed. 4 parts of expressed juice are mixed with 1 part of mel. After standing at 37 °C for 12 h during the night, 5 parts of ethanol 96% are added. Filter after 5 to 10 days. The filtrate is Rubellit comp. Ø. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.1		Der Merkurstab 2013; 66(5): 415-436, 439-442.
Silex ñ Lapis cancri solutus	Silex (Flint) / Kalii nitras / Lapis cancri / Acetum Vini dest. (Vitis vinifera L.)	Calcium silicate is precipitated by adding an aqueous solution of potassium silicate (prepared from flint and potassium nitrate) to an aqueous solution of calcium acetate (prepared from Lapis Cancri and distilled red wine vinegar in several steps) and dissolved in distilled red wine vinegar to give a clear solution. The solution is diluted with water to 1.0% and then succussed to result the potency D2. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1		Vademecum 2013: Silex-Lapis Cancri solutus
Solutio alkalina	Tartarus crudus	An aqueous solution (10% dry residue) prepared from ash of green plants and crude cream of tartar. Potentising acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1 (ethanol 18%)	Solutio alkalina	Vademecum

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Solutio Ferri comp.	Kalii carbonas / Ferrum(III)-Kalium-tartaricum / Sulfur / Trona / Acidum tartaricum	The mineral composition according to the model of Urtica dioica, Planta tota, Solutio Ferri comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / ferric potassium tartrate / sulfur / trona / acidum tartaricum. Potassium carbonate, trona and sulfur are melted together. The resulting melt is dissolved in water and alternately heated and subjected to an intensive air-stream. After this procedure ferric potassium tartrate and acidum tartaricum are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1	Aqua Maris comp.; Glandula suprarenalis/Solutio Ferri comp.; Solutio Ferri comp.	Vademecum
Solutio Sacchari comp.	Acidum sulfuricum / Betula pendula Roth / Kalii carbonas / Ferrum(III)-Kalium-tartaricum / Mel / Quartz / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L), Radix, Solutio Sacchari comp. is prepared from: Carbo Betulae / potassium carbonate / ferric potassium tartrate / honey / quartz / trona. Potassium carbonate, quartz and Carbo Betulae are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, to which a solution of potassium carbonate, trona and diluted sulfuric acid is added. After addition of further diluted sulfuric acid, honey and then ferric potassium tartrate are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1	Cinis Arnicae comp.; Solutio Sacchari comp.	Vademecum
Solutio Siliceae comp.	Kalii carbonas / Marmor / Quarz / Sulfur / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Equisetum arvense, Herba, Solutio Siliceae comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / marble / quartz / trona and sulfur. Quartz and potassium carbonate are melted together and dissolved in water. In a further step marble, potassium carbonate and trona are dissolved in water by adding vapour from burning sulfur to a second solution. Both solutions are combined under continuos vapour from burning sulfur. Air is passed through the resulting solution for several hours. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 3.1.1	Discus intervertebralis embryonalis/Solutio Siliceae comp.; Solutio Silicea comp.	Vademecum
Stannum mellitum	Stannum metallicum / Mel / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	Stannum mellitum is prepared from tin with honey and cane sugar. Depressions are introduced into a sheet of tin, this is filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten tin. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled this time with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten tin. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Der Merkurstab 1992; 45(2): 108-12
Trabeculum comp.	Acidum formicicum e formica / Ammoniae solutio concentrata 25% / Cupri sulfas pentahydricus / Hydrargyrum biiodatum / Kalii iodidum / Trabeculum (Bos taurus L.)	1 g of Trabeculum comp. (=D1) is prepared from: 0.1 g Trabeculum / 0.1 g acidum formicicum e formica (5%) / 0.005 g Cupri sulfas / 0.007 g Ammoniae solutio concentrata / 0.03 g Hydrargyrum biiodatum / 0.0225 g Kalii iodidum. Trabeculum is treated with an aqueous solution of acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with an ammoniacal solution of copper sulfate. Then a solution of mercury (II) iodide and potassium iodide and finally lactose monohydrate is added. After drying, the whole mixture is rubbed to a uniform powder. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	Trabeculum comp.	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Uvea comp.	Acidum formicicum e formica / Acidum ascorbicum / Liquor natrii silicici DAB 6/ Ferrosi sulfas / Hyoscyamus niger L. / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum / Uvea (Bos taurus L.)	1 g Uvea comp. contains: Uvea bovis 1.00 g / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 0.10 g / Acidum ascorbicum 0.10 g / Ferrum sulfuricum 0.33 g / Solutio natrii silicici 1.00 g / Hyoscyamus niger, Planta tota Rh Ø (HAB, Method 21) 1.00 g. Uvea is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with a solution of magnesium phosphate dihydrate and sodium silicate. Then an aqueous solution of ferrous sulfate and ascorbic acid is added, and finally Hyoscyamus, Planta tota Rh Ø is added. After drying, the substance is powdered. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		
Viscum Abietis	Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch.	Aqueous extracts from fresh plants of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch., prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Abietis) e planta tota K	Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom.	Aqueous extract prepared from the dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies alba Mill.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Crataegi) e planta tota K	Viscum album ssp. album L.	Aqueous extracts prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Crataegus L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Mali) e planta tota K	Viscum album L. ssp. album	Aqueous extract prepared from the dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (host tree: Malus domestica Borck.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Pini) e planta tota K	Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus species) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Populi) e planta tota K	Viscum album L. ssp. album	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L ssp. album (Host tree: Populus L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Quercus) ex herba K	Viscum album L ssp. album	Aqueous extract prepared from dried plant including fruit and excluding haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host tree: Quercus L.) prepared according to HAB method 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Salicis) e planta tota K	Viscum album L. ssp. album L.	Aqueous extracts of dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Salix L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum album (Tiliae) e planta tota K	Viscum album L. ssp. album	Aqueous extract of dried plants including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Tilia L.) prepared according to HAB 38	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali	Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plants excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Borkh.; apple tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali	Viscum album ssp. album L.	prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Mali cum Argento	Viscum album L. ssp. album / Argenti carbonas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared with addition of silver carbonate ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg	

Name of composition	Scientific names of ingredients	Preparation method	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph	Other
Viscum Mali cum Cupro	Viscum album ssp. album L./ Malachite	Fermented aqueous extract prepared with addition of copper carbonate (malachite) ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu	
Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album ssp. album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of mercury sulfate ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Pini	Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.	prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Pini	Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm.	prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album	
Viscum Pini cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollmann / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Querci	Viscum album ssp. album L.	Fermented aqueous extract prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album	
Viscum Querci cum Argento	Viscum album ssp. album L. / Argenti carbonas	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of silver carbonate (10^{-8} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg	
Viscum Querci cum Cupro	Viscum album ssp. album L. / Malachite	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of copper carbonate (malachite) (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu	
Viscum Querci cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album L. ssp. album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	
Viscum Ulmi cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album ssp. album L./ Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg	

APPENDIX 2.7

Stocks with special manufacturing methods

Name of the substance	Definition	Preparation method	Reference to Standard	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Arnica montana, Planta tota rec. 1:1.1	Ethanolic extract of whole plants of Arnica montana L.	Whole, fresh flowering plants of Arnica montana L. are comminuted and macerated for 10-30 days with 1.1 parts of ethanol, giving an Ethanol concentration of 36 % V/V, then pressed and filtered.	HAB	Arnica, Planta tota	
Bryophyllum pinnata 1:1.1	Aqueous extract of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum are macerated under occasional stirring with 1.1 parts of water for 1.5-2.5 h, pressed and the fluid later filtered.	HAB	Bryophyllum	
Carbo Betulae	Carbon obtained from wood of Betula pendula Roth or B. pubescens Ehrh.	Carbon prepared from wood of Betula pendula or B. pubescens according to APC 4.2 (cf. Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.2). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	HAB; Ph.fr.	Barium/Pancreas comp. ; Carbo Betulae; Carbo Betulae cum Methano ; Carbo Betulae/Carvi aetheroleum ; Carbo Betulae/Crataegus ; Carbo Betulae/Sulfur	
Carbo Coffeae	Product with min. 1.0% caffeine, obtained by intensive roasting of ripe, dried seeds of Coffea arabica L.	Intensive roasting of ripe, dried seeds of Coffea arabica HAB. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1	(HAB)		
Carbo Pteridii aquilini	Carbon obtained from leaves of Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn	Leaves of Pteridium aquilinum are dried and the carbon is prepared according to APC 4.2. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Carbones/Pankreas/Witherit	
Carex arenaria, ethanol. Decoctum 1:4	Ethanolic decoction of the dried rhizome of Carex arenaria L.	The comminuted dried rhizome is mixed with 3.14 parts of water and 0.86 parts of ethanol 96 %. After 12-18 h, the mixture is heated for 30 min under reflux to get an ethanolic decoction 1:4 (DER) (cf. Ph.Eur. 1.2.12). The mixture is pressed and later filtered.			
Cinis Glechomatis	Ash from dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.	Ash obtained from dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea acc. to APC 4.3. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1		Cinis Glechomatis	Vademecum
Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae	Ash obtained from dried, aerial parts of Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Urtica dioica Ferro culta (app. 2.5) is dried and the ash prepared according to Ph.Helv. 17.7.4.3 (cf. APC 4.3). Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.		Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Vademecum
Citrus limon, Fruct. rec., 1:0.41	Ethanolic extract of fresh fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman fil.	Fresh fruit of Citrus limon is extracted with ethanol 36 % (DER = 1:0.41)			
Equisetum arvense, Fermentatio cum Sero Lactis 1:4.1	Extract of fresh, green sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L. with whey	1 part of fresh, green sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense is extracted with 4.1 parts of fresh whey from milk of the cow (DER 1:4.1). The filtered extract is the mother tincture, 5 parts of which are potentised to D1 with 5 parts of boiled and filtered whey and then to D3 with boiled and filtered whey. The bulk preparation is filtrated through 0.2 µm and then immediately filled.	(HAB)		Vademecum
Hypericum perforatum; Flos; Extr. oleos 1:2	Oil extract of fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum	Fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum are extracted with 2 parts of refined sesame oil.		Hypericum	

Name of the substance	Definition	Preparation method	Reference to Standard	Reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph	Other
Lac Taraxaci	Fresh latex of Taraxacum officinale (fresh underground parts) collected in spring (vernale)	Ph.Eur. 1.1.2			Der Merkurstab 2010(63)(1): 4-21
Laurocerasus 100%	Aqueous distillate of the fresh leaves of Prunus laurocerasus L. with 0.09-0.11 % HCN	See monograph; adjustment of the distillate to 0.1% HCN by adding ethanol 4.8 %	HAB; Ph. Helv.	Spiritus contra tussim	
Mucilago Levistici D1	Aqueous extract of the dried root of Levisticum officinale Koch	The dried root is comminuted (2000) and 1 part is macerated for 12-18 h with 8.4 parts of water and then pressed and filtered. To one part of the fluid 0.1905 parts of ethanol 96 % are added to get Mucilago Levistici D1 with 18 % ethanol. Later, the extract is filtered.	Ph.Eur.	Levisticum	
Sepia Gruneris	Dried secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.	Acc. to Gruner: 1 part of the dried secretion is extracted under stirring with 5.24 parts of water for at least 5 h, then mixed with 4.76 parts of ethanol 96 %, potentised and filtered. Potentisation acc. to Ph.Eur. 1.1.9, 2.2.3	HAB	Sepia comp.	Vademecum: Sepia
Viscum album, Extractum resinosum	An extract of the lipophilic, resinous substances of the green parts of Viscum album L.	Fresh green parts (stems, leaves and green generative organs) of Viscum album are comminuted and extracted with supercritical CO_2 at 700-900 bar.			Phytomedicine 2015; 22. Suppl. 1 S. S28. Anthroposophische Pharmazie Salumed Verlag Berlin 2016

APPENDIX II

Correlation table: Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing methods in the HPUS

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	**Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS**
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.1 (HAB 1a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.2 (HAB 1b)	Class O
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.3 (HAB 2a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.4 (HAB 2b)	Class M
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.5 (HAB 3a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.6 (HAB 3b) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.7 (HAB 3c)	Class N
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.8 (HAB 4a)	Class C
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.9 (HAB 4b)	Class E
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class C is the same process for the first step [1]
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class D is the same process for the first step [2]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.1 (HAB 5a)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.2 (HAB 5b)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.1 (HAB 6)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.2 (Ph. fr.)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.2.1 (HAB 7)	"Medication: Medicated Powders" applies for centesimal, but not for decimal attenuations [3]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.1 (HAB 8a) Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.2 (HAB 8b)	Class H

1 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 produces a 1:10 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class C also produces a 1:10 preparation. But this is considered the same as a D1. Thus, Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 D1 = HPUS D2. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.

2 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 produces a 1:20 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class D also produces a 1:20 preparation. But the Class D preparation is then attenuated 2 parts + 8 parts vehicle to produce the D2. The preparation by Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 is attenuated 1 part + 9 parts vehicle to produce the D1. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.

3 HPUS "Mediated Powders" are specified to be made from 1 part liquid preparation + 100 parts vehicle.

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS
HAB Method 9	"Medication: Tablets"
HAB Method 10	"Medication: Globules"
HAB Method 11	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 12a	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 12b	Class M
HAB Method 13	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 14	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 15	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Ophthalmic Solutions"
HAB Method 16	New Section 39, and "Introduction to the Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia of the United States: Statement regarding combinations of homoeopathic drugs"
HAB Method 17	"Attenuations: Fifty Millesimal Scale of Attenuation"
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.1-2 (HAB 18a-b)	Class M, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.3-5 (HAB 18c-e)	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.6 (HAB 18f)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.7-8 (HAB 19a-b)	Class M, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Methods 1.2.9-11 (HAB 19c-e)	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.12 (HAB 19f)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	**Corresponding manufacturing Methods in the HPUS**
Ph. Eur. Method 1.2.13 (HAB 20)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Method 21	Class O, fermented
HAB Method 22	Class P
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.3 (HAB 23a)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.2 (HAB 23b)	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Ph. Eur. Method 1.4.4 (HAB 24a)	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Methods 33	Class P
HAB Methods 34	Class P
HAB Methods 35	Class P
HAB Methods 36	Class P
Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.1 (HAB 40a) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.2 (HAB 40b) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.3 (HAB 40c)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.1 (HAB 42a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.2 (HAB 42b)	Class L, Method II
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.3 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.1 (HAB 41a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.2 (HAB 41b) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.3 (HAB 41c) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.4 (HAB 41d)	Class L, Method II (alternate methodology)
HAB Methods 45	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Nasal Solutions"
HAB Methods 51	Class P